



Nasfield's
English Grammar Series.

Book III.

FULLY EXPLAINED WITH CHINESE AND GIVING
SOLUTION OF EXAMPLES
IN THE TEXT.

甯陽趙灼譯述

納氏
第三
英文
法
講義

(卷下)

緒 言

- 一 納氏文法叢書有二特色。不偏於理論而注重實際一也。專為東洋人而著者二也。故其書最適於我國人研究斯學之用。但原書課本體裁。處處留為教師解釋之餘地。故意多含渾。初學驟讀。未易了解。茲譯講義。以飭同胞。
- 一 是書雖顏曰講義。然仍依原書之章節次序。無敢倒置。此蓋不特存其真。亦欲使讀者便於與原書參讀耳。
- 一 文法一學。最重解剖。納氏原書。尤重此點。其每於詞類之編末。特設「解剖模範」(parsing model) 一則。讀者若能揣摩而變化之。則於斯學之道。思過半矣。
- 一 原書之例文。其另下註釋者固多。其附於缺如者亦不少。初學者易蹈捉摸不定之弊。茲特擇其沉晦者而詳附間註以醒眉目。

- 一 語學最乏趣味。而文法尤甚。本書於 書之練習問題。皆附答案。此不獨能增讀者之心得。尤足助其興味。
- 一 答人問題。非有相當學力。未易得其正確。譯者末學。不敢妄加杜撰。其一切答案。除照錄業師口授外。更參考他書。以期無誤。
- 一 第三卷原書凡二百二十餘頁。今益以譯解註釋答案。所增不下三倍。若待全書告成。不免延擱時日。故分爲上下兩卷。先將上卷出版以慰諸者先睹之快。其下卷亦已付印。不日續出。
- 一 是書僅成於一人之手。譯者學植淺薄。謬誤之處。在所不免。海內達人。幸以教之。

光 緒 三 十 四 年 三 月

譯 者 謹 識

Contents. 目次

	PAGE.
第十編 Analysis of Sentences 文章之分解...258	
章一 Analysis of Simple Sentences 單文之 分解.....	
„ 二 Analysis of Compound Sentences 複文 之分解.....271	
„ 三 Analysis of Complex Sentences 混文 之分解.....279	
第十一編 The Same words in Different Parts of Speech 同字而異詞類 .....317	
第十二編 Common Errors Corrected 普通誤謬 之更正 .....325	
第十三編 Syntax with Parsing Chart 文章論及 解剖表 .....364	
章一 Relations of words to one another 言辭相互之關係.....364	
„ 二 Position of words 言辭之位置.....384	
第十四編 Sequence of Tenses: Direct and In- direct Narration 時之次序,直接說 話法及間接說話法.....401	

	PAGE.
章一 Sequence of Tenses 時之次序.....	401
„ 二 Direct and Indirect Narration 直接說 話法及間接說話法.....	409
第十五編 Analysis of word: Suffixes and Prefixes	
言辭之分解, 添尾字及添首字	435
章一 English Suffixes 英語添尾字.....	436
„ 二 Compound words 複合辭.....	441
„ 三 English Prefixes 英語添首字.....	443
„ 四 Latin and French Suffixes 拉丁及佛 蘭西添尾字.....	445
„ 五 Greek Suffixes 希臘添尾語.....	451
„ 六 Latin and French Prefixes 拉丁及佛 蘭西添首字.....	452
„ 七 Greek Prefixes 希臘添首字.....	458
第十六編 Punctuation, or the Right Use of Stops	
句點法, 即點符之正用法	460
附 錄 A. The Conjugation of Verbs 動詞之 變化	483
附 錄 B. Auxiliary and Defective Verbs 助動 詞不完全動詞	495

NESSFIELD'S GRAMMAR SERIES.

Book III.

VOL. II.



Chapter X. 第十編

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES. 文之分解

§ 章一. ANALYSIS OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

單文之分解

297. 文章而僅有一個有定動詞者(逃出或省略), 是謂之單文; 如:—

主語	有定動詞
Rain.....	falls.

Simple 爲單獨 (single) 之意, 文章而以單名之者, 以其僅有一個有定動詞在其中也。

298. 文章而有一個以上之有定動詞者(逃出或省略), 是謂之複文 Compound), 又謂之混文 (Complex).

故:—“If I see him to-day, I will invite to my house.”

(余若今日見他, 余將請他到吾家食大碗)

此是非單文, 蓋其有“see”及“will invite”兩個有定動詞在中也。

又：“He was well received and (was) listened to with respect, whenever he spoke.

(彼人講時，他善爲受納，且以誠敬而傾聽)

此亦非單文，蓋其有述出之“was”及省畧之“was”與“spoke”三個有定動詞也。

229. 構成單文有四要素，而所謂分解者，分解此文之數要素而已。四要素何，示如左：—

§ 1. The Subject. (主辭)

§ 2. Adjuncts to the Subject. (有時亦無)

(主辭之加添辭)

§ 3. The Predicate (敘述辭)

§ 4. Adjuncts to the Predicate. (有時亦無)

(敘述辭之加添辭)

此等四要素中，其主辭與敘述辭爲文章不能或缺之者，蓋無斯二者，則文章不能成立也。(參照 § 3)。但主辭之加添辭與敘述辭之加添辭，不是關於重要之部分。彼不過單爲加添辭耳。可有可無，即除去之亦不妨害文章之成立。

300. I. 主辭須爲名詞或有名詞之効用辭乃可。

II. 主辭之加添辭(有時亦無)，須爲形容詞或有形容詞之効用字乃可，因是名爲修飾的加添辭，(又有時稱爲主辭之擴充辭 Enlargement of the Subject.

III. 敘述辭須爲有定動詞，或含有一有定動詞於其中。

IV. 敘述辭動詞之加添辭。(有時亦無)，須爲副詞或有副詞之効用字乃可，因是名爲副詞的加添辭。(又有時稱爲敘述辭之擴張辭 Extension of the Predicate.

I. 主辭	II. 主辭之修飾的加添辭	III. 敘述辭助詞	IV. 敘述辭之副詞的加添辭
A tiger.	fierce	was shot	to-day.
The tigress.	tired.	will sleep	soundly.

(一猛虎今日射殺)

(疲馬將熟睡)

301. 主辭可以依種種之形表示之。其一切之形，亦如學者之所已學，所謂名詞或有名詞之效用字是也。

	主辭	敘述辭
(a)	名詞.....Rain	is falling.
	省略名詞.....The virtuous (men 畧)	will prosper.
	(道德之人將光榮)	
(b)	代名詞.....We	must go.
(c)	名詞無定法...To work	is healthy.
(d)	動名詞.....Working	is healthy.
(e)	句.....How to do this	is doubtful.
	(如何為此是未決定乎)	

備考 1. 一學者應注意以上諸例其所表主辭之形，除(缺)一節外，餘皆與前 § 22 所揭者為一致。但此一節將於下文與複句說明之。

備考 2. 一名詞無定法用於主辭時，有時置之於敘述辭之後，且與“it”之代名詞同位；如：—

It is sad to see this=It (即 to see this) is sad.

(見此而悲)

Attributive Adjuncts to the Subjects.

主辭之修飾的加添辭

302. 主辭之修飾的加添辭，所以形容主辭者也，故其字必為形容詞或有形容詞之効用字，此理已屢言於前矣。

備考·一有定冠詞及無定冠詞，以正當論之，雖其屬於指示形容詞之部分，但於文章之分解上則不加入加添辭中。

303. 修飾的加添辭之主要種類，約有左揭之數種：—

(a) 形容詞；如：—

A *heavy* shower fell to-day.

(今日大降驟雨)

此例之“*heavy*,”是加添一意義於主辭之“*shower*”以表其屬於何種之雨。故即為主辭之加添辭。

(b) 分詞或動詞狀形容詞，參照 § 114 (1)：—

A *fertilising* shower fell to-day.

(今日大降甘雨)

此例之“*fertilising*,”是亦加添一意義於主辭。所以表此雨將有何種之作用。故即為主辭之加添辭。

(c) 動名詞的無定法參照 § 114 (s) 及 § 236 (b)：—

Water *to drink* is scarce in this place.

(用水為飲料此處甚稀)

此例之“*to drink*,”是表示水所以應用之目的，恰如形容詞而形容名詞之“*water*.”

(d) 領位之名詞或代名詞，參照 114 (4)：—

My son's teacher called here to-day.

(吾子之師今日來此探訪)

此例“*my son's*”是加添一意義於主辭，且形容名詞之“*teacher*,”與形容詞同作用。

(e) 用於形容詞之名詞或動名詞，參照 § 114 (3)：—

The *village* watchman fell asleep in the night.

(村落之更夫睡倒於夜間)

Drinking water is scarce in this place.

(此地飲用水甚罕)

註.—此 *drinking* water 之 *drinking* 是動名詞，與前之 *the fading flower* 之 *fading* 是分詞，其形體相同，其性質則全異，但學者難免有誤認之弊，茲更詳解之如：—

Drinking water = water for *drinking*.

The *fading* flower = the flower that is *fading*.

(f) 同位之名詞，參照 § 19：—

Alexander, *the King* of Macedon, conquered Persia.

(馬其頓王亞歷山大戰服波斯)

(g) 前置詞與其賓辭，參照 § 113 (b)：—

A man *of virtuous* (= a virtuous man) will not a lie.

(賢人不說欺言)

(h) 副詞與省畧之分詞，參照 § 114 (2)：—

The *then* King = the then (reigning 畧) King.

(當時統治之王)

304. 敘述辭須為有定動詞，或含有一有定動詞於其中。若動詞自己不能自造一完全意義時（如 § 1 所定之定義），苟其後有一語或數語，而為完全意義用者，則無論其一語或數語之為何語，皆可作敘述辭之一部看也。凡能作敘述辭之形者，列表如左：—

主 辭	叙 述 辭		
	有定動詞	賓辭與形容語	完成辭與形容語
1. { A hog The snake	grunts was killed	..........	..........
2. { My son The thief	became was ordered	..... .....	a good scholar to be severely punished
3. { The gardener The teacher	killed can teach	that poisonous snake (a) My sons (b) Euclid	..........
4. They	found	the weary man	sound asleep

1. { 豕叫
蛇被殺
2. { 吾子變成一頁學者
其賊下令處之以嚴刑
3. { 園丁殺一毒蛇
教師教吾子以歐克列幾何學
4. 他發見疲人熟睡

在 (1) 例之第一文，有完全叙述之自動詞 (參照 § 181)，次文有被動語氣之他動詞，兩動詞皆不要何等之叙述或完成辭。故僅以動詞而構成叙述辭。

在 (2) 例第一文，為不完叙述之自動詞 (參照 § 182)，次文為被動語氣之變成動詞 (參照 § 194)，此兩動詞皆要完成辭以完全其叙述。

在 (3) 例第一文，為引單賓辭之他動詞 (參照 § 175)，次文為引複賓辭之他動詞 (參照 § 177)，此兩動詞皆要賓辭 (單或複) 而於叙述未完全前以述出之。

在(4)例爲自動語氣之變成動詞，故要賓辭與完成辭(參照 § 178)

備考 1. 一若賓辭或完成辭有形容之語附隨之時，則賓辭或完成辭可與之記入於同欄中。

故在於完成辭之 “good scholar,” 則不必更設別欄以記載形容用之形容詞 “good.”

又在於完成辭之 “to be severely punished,” 不必更設別欄以記載形容用之副詞 “severely.”

又表中所記之賓辭 “that poisonous snake,” 亦不必更設別欄以記載形容用之形容詞 “that” 及 “poisonous.”

備考 2. 一助動詞與主動詞均可置之於一欄中。故云 “can teach” 時，亦不必設一欄以記 “can” 而他欄以記 “teach” 也。

Adverb Adjuncts (to Verb of Predicate).

敘述動詞之副詞之加添辭

· 305. 凡事物爲形容動詞之動作者(指關於時, 方法, 地位, 原因, 手段, 器械, 目的, 其他之事情), 謂之敘述辭之加添辭或附加辭。

凡如此附加辭, 既爲形容乎動詞, 故其須爲副詞或有副詞之效用字乃可。

306. 副詞之加添辭之重要種類, 有左揭之數種:—

(a) 副詞.—He sleeps *scantly*.

(b) 副詞句.—They walked *side by side*.

(彼等並步而行)

(c) 形容詞.—He went away *sad*. He stood *alone*.

(他去後愁愁)

(他孤立)

(d) 分詞.—He went away *weary* and *disappointed*.

(他去後煩悶且失望)

- (e) 動名詞的無定法.—He come *to see* the horse.
(他來看馬)
- (f) 副詞的賓辭.—He walked *all day*. He walked *ten miles*.
- (g) 前置詞與其賓辭.—He fell *into a deep well*.
(他跌落一深井)
- (h) 獨立句.—We all started, *he remaining behind*.
(我等皆出發，彼則留後)

Example of Analysis.

分解之例

1. A darwesh,* traveling through Tartary, having arrived at the town of Balkah, entered the King's palace by mistake, thinking it to be a public inn or serai.

(有打亞威人旅行貫乎韃靼，迨至一郡，名巴爾克，誤入其王之宮禁，而以為其處是公共之旅舍云)

2. My father taught his sons Euclid with much success.

(吾父教其子以歐克列幾何學大有成功)

3. Alexander, the King of Macedon, was surnamed the Great after his conquest of the Persian Empire.

(馬其頓王亞歷山大，其征服波斯後，自署其名爲大王)

4. The man employed for this purpose caught the thief stealing a watch.

(用此人之目的，爲捉捕竊時計之盜竊)

* Darwesh, 謂印度深信宗教，輕浮世之人。serai 印度及韃靼之旅舍。
thinking it to be it (the King's) palace 之代名詞。

5. The merchant, having much property to sell, caused all his goods to be conveyed on camels, there being no railway in that particular part of the country.

(商人擁有豐富之財物而賣者，因其國之特別部分無鐵道，遂使一駱駝以搬運其貨物)。

6. A gentleman of wealth and position, living in London some sixty years ago, had a country seat in Kent, some forty miles from the Metropolis.

(有一富有財產及權勢之紳士，六十年前居倫敦，離首府(倫敦)四十英里一別莊)

試照前之模範(參照後表)而分解左之單文：—

1. A certain fowler, having fixed his net, withdrew to a little distance for the sake of allowing birds to come.

2. The king of the pigeons was by chance passing through the sky at this time with a troop of followers.

3. He and they caught sight of the rice-grains scattered by the fowler near the net.

4. The king of the pigeons then asked his rice-loving followers this question—

5. Why are rice-grains lying in this lonely place?

6. We will see into this thing.

7. We must be cautious in our movements.

8. One conceited pigeon among the rest gave them bad advice.

9. He told them to fly down to the rice-grains for the sake of satisfying their hunger.

單文分解之模範表

I. Subject. 第一 主辭	II. Attributive Adjuncts (to subject). 第二 修飾的加添辭 (對於主辭)	III. Predicate. 第三 敘述辭		IV. Adverbial Adjuncts (to Verb of Predicate). 第四 副詞的加添辭 (對於敘述辭)
		Complement with qualifying words 完成辭與其 形容語	Object with qualifying words 賓語與其形容語	Finite Verb 定動詞
1. A Darwesh	(a) travelling through Tartary (b) having arrived at the town of Balkh	"	the king's palace	entered
2. Father	my	"	(a) all his sons (b) Euclid	taught
3. Alexander	the king of Macedonia	the Great	"	was sur- named
4. The man	employed for the purpose	stealing a watch.	the thief	caught
5. The merchant	having much property sell	to be conveyed on camels	all his goods	there being no railway in that particular part of the country.
6. A gentleman	(a) of wealth and position (b) living in London (c) some sixty years ago	"	a country seat	(a) in Kent (b) some forty miles from the metropolis.

10. Having flown down and listened to this bad advice, they began to peck up and swallow the grains against the advice of their king.

11. On their beginning to peck they were all caught in the net.

12. Then they blamed their rash and imprudent friend for having given them such bad advice.

13. They ought rather to have blamed themselves for having listened to him.

14. The king now told them what to do.

15. At one moment and with one united movement springing suddenly up fly off with the net.

16. Small things become strong by being united among themselves.

17. Even mad elephants can be held fast by a rope made of thin blades of grass.

18. The pigeons acted on this advice.

19. Making a sudden spring together, they flew up into the air, carrying the net with them.

20. At first the fowler hoped to see them come down again to the earth.

21. But they passed out of sight with the net about them.

22. In this way the fowler lost both his net and the pigeons.

23. The pigeons then said to their king :—" O king, what

is the next thing to be done?"

24. The king directed them to a certain place.

25. There his friend, the king of the mice, received them kindly.

26. The king of the mice set them all free by nibbling through the net.

27. Thus the whole troop of pigeons escaped by means of union.

28. All men should profit by this lesson.

29. A chariot will not go on a single wheel.

30. A creeper, having nothing to support it, must fall to the earth.

譯 解

- (1) 某捕鳥者已設罟其網，因欲令鳥來投，故引繩畧遠。
- (2) 適有鳩之王偶然於此時與其一隊之從者，從天空飛過。
- (3) 王與其從者，觸見捕鳥人所撒近於網邊之米粒。
- (4) 鳩王乃即此問題（指其所撒之米粒處，以詢于其受食米粒之從者曰：—
- (5) 何故有此米粒而置在此寂寞之地乎。
- (6) 我等將近前以觀之。
- (7) 我等須謹慎我的之行動也。
- (8) 內中有一自貢之鳩，以邪言惑于彼等。
- (9) 他告衆鳩飛落于米粒處，以爲此正合充其得腹矣。
- (10) 彼衆鳩既聽此邪言，而背其王言矣，于是群飛落米粒處以啄而食之。
- (11) 當其啄食伊始，彼等乃盡被纏縛於網。
- (12) 於是衆鳩以其友違此邪言以陷於難也，咸歸告其友之輕率及凶莽。
- (13) 而不知彼等還選罪己之聽他也。

- (14) 鳩王至此，乃告其以脫離之辦法。
- (15) 謂於此須臾之間，速組織一移動機關，便可以忽然速翔而飛去。
- (16) 蓋小物之變為強者，乃由其自己互相聯合耳。
- (17) 譬如象雖大而瘋狂，則可以用精練業所造之繩而繫之。
- (18) 衆鳩遂行此忠。
- (19) 彼等乃忽相聯為機關，而速翔飛上天空矣。
- (20) 其始猶鳥者尚望衆鳩之再落地。
- (21) 豈知速翔與衆鳩皆去而不見矣。
- (22) 由此方法，猶鳥者一霎時作一網與衆鳩是也。
- (23) 衆鳩乃告于其王曰：吁，吾王，其次又如何辦法乎。
- (24) 鳩王乃引其到某地方。
- (25) 彼也是其友(王之友)為鼠之王，極厚意收養他們。
- (26) 鼠王乃囑其精而令彼等脫了束縛。
- (27) 是則一隊之鳩，乃由聯合之法而得脫離矣。
- (28) 凡人依此原理，皆應有利益。
- (29) 蓋早給之車必不能行。
- (30) 譬如網線者經無扶助，則必墜於地。
- (解答答案表附於次頁)

§ 2. ANALYSIS OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

複文之分解

312. 複文者，由二個或二個以上之同位(即同等或獨立之節)節，所成之文也。

構成複文之數節者，可用記述于 § 288 諸等之同位接續詞以結合之(參照 § 5 節之定義)。

(i) The sun rose with power, *and* the fog dispersed.

太陽昇上之勢熾時，而烟霧消散

(登錄續詞)

- (2) Either he must leave the house *or* I (must) leave the house). (汝須離家或余) (選擇接續詞)
- (3) He called at my house, *but* I did not see him. (他來吾家訪余, 但余不見他) (對照接續詞)
- (4) He came back tired; *for* he had walked all day. (他歸來已倦; 因他行了終日也) (推並接續詞)

308. 複牒代名詞或副詞, 若其用於接續之意義而非用於限制之意義時, 則可用之連結同位節(參照 § 163).

He slew all the prisoners, *which* (and this 同) was a very barbarous act. (他殺戮捕虜, 此是極野蠻之行爲也)

He is clever at planting young trees: *for which* purpose (and for this purpose 同) every one is glad to employ him. (他是巧于植稚樹, 因是人皆喜借他.)

He went to London, *where* (and there 同) he stay ten days. (他去倫敦, 因滯留彼處十日間)

Immense saw-mills have been erected near Rangoon and Maulmain, *which* (and these towns 同) are situated at the mouths of the two great rivers of Burma. (宏大之鋸木機已建於仰光及嗎買民之近處, 而此兩大都市是位於伊羅二大河之口)

309. Contracted Sentences 短縮文——複文有因欲避反覆無爲之雷同語, 故屢屢爲短縮之形:—

(a) 凡對於同一之主辭而有兩敘述辭時, 則其主辭僅記述一次而足, 無庸再次記述:—

- (1) The sun *rose* and (the sun 畧) *filled* the sky with fight. (太陽既昇, 且充盈其光線于天空)

(1) He *called* at my house, but (he 畧) *left* soon after.

(他來吾家訪余，但稍間就告別)

(b) 凡對於同一之敘述辭而有兩主辭時，則其敘述辭僅記述一次而足，亦無庸再次記述：—

(1) He as well as *you* is guilty (=He is guilty as well as you are guilty). (堆疊接續詞)

(他之罪適同汝之罪)

(2) Either *this* man sinned or his *parents* (sinned 畧).

(此人犯罪或其兩親)

(選擇接續詞)

(3) He is poor, but (he is) honest. (對照接續詞)

(他雖是貧，但忠實)

4) He is diligent, and therefore (he is 畧) prosperous.

(他勤勉，故得光榮)

(推疊接續詞)

備考 1. 一凡兩主辭由 *and* 結合時，則不能常破裂此文為兩節。例如左舉之兩文，是兩主辭由 *and* 結合而不能分離者：—

He and I are great friends. (他與余是親友)

Youth and experience seldom exist together.

(少年與老成殆難共事)

由上例觀之，其文之不能破裂為二節如此。是以吾等不能將其文改寫之如左：—

He is a great friend, and I am a great friend. 又 youth seldom exists together, experience seldom exists together.

備考 2. 一凡兩名詞由接續詞 *and* 結合時，其所表者為一事或可作一事定者，則不能分離此兩主辭而為各別節之主辭：—

The great *poet-and-scholar* is dead.

(大詩伯與大學者已死)

Curry and rice was his favorite dish.

(黃蓋與飯是其寵愛之食品)

備考 3. 一凡兩名詞或節句是由接續詞之 *or* 所結合，且此 *or* 又非用於選擇之意義時，則此兩名詞或兩句，可作一個主辭看：—

A tribe or caste is part of a nation.

(人種即族階是國民之一部分)

How to sing or how to spell was never taught at that school, (如何唱歌如何併音，是總非彼學堂之所教授)

310. Omission of the Conjunction “and” 接續詞 “and” 之省畧：— 選擇接續詞，對照接續詞，推量接續詞，皆不省畧。惟記者之目的欲使記於文中諸事實以成一貫者，則可以不必用堆疊接續詞 “and” 以連結文中諸事實。惟於其最後之文或動詞之前置一 “and” 足矣

有一文于此，其記述蒸氣之效用，僅用一主辭而已，然對於不下二十六個定動詞即敘述辭而不覺文氣之中斷者。

What will not the steam-engine do? It propels, elevates, lowers, pumps, drains, pulls, drives, blasts, digs, cuts, saws, planes, bores, blows, forges, hammers, files, polishes, rivets, cards, spins, winds, weaves, coins, prints, and does more things than I can think of or enumerate.

(蒸氣器械所不能為者何，推進(噴輪船列車等)，揚物(重物)，卸物(重物)，抽出(抽水抽氣)，排灌(溝渠之類)，拉曳，爆裂，摺度，切割，鑄斷，鉗削，鑽穿，打擊，鍛轉，槌打，研磨，鉸釘，梳毛，紡織，卷，編織，鑄造，貨幣，印刷，及其他尚有為所習考思或較舉不出者)

Rules and Model. (規則及模範)

311. 複文分解法之規則，記述如左：—

- (a) 指出各節之定動詞。
 (b) 定動詞有省略而不述出者填補之。
 (c) 指出順次各定動詞之主辭。
 (d) 各定動詞之主辭有省略而不述出者填補之。
 (e) 又盡錄出其所添於各節之主辭，敘述辭及加添辭（若其有加添辭時）
 (f) 指出此節繫結於彼節之連結字。

(分解之模範見次頁)

- (1) His greatest enemy, as well as his best friends, repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge.

(其所負之罪名，彼之最大讐敵與最親友，皆同樣反覆宣言其無罪證矣)

若分解此文則有左舉之二節：—

第一節 His greatest enemy repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge.

第二節 His best friends repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fault laid his charge.

連結字 (Connective):—As well as.

- (2) Either you or your son must sign his name.

(汝或汝之子須要署其名)

分解此文亦有左之二舉節：—

第一節 You must sign your name.

第二節 Your son must sign his name.

連結字：—Either.....or.

(3) He, not I, is certainly the author of that plan.

(不是余爲彼計謀之發起人，乃確是他也)

分解此文亦有左之二節：—

第一節 He is certainly the author of that plan.

第二節 I am certainly not the author of that plan.

連結字：—(無) 此文不必要連結字。

茲更將以上三文分解之而再表如下(見次頁)：—

Compound Sentence to be Analysed.

複文之分解

1. He as well as you is tired of all this work. (兩節)
2. Either he or his friend must have opened the door; for no other person had the key. (三節)
3. The Lord knoweth the way of righteous, but the way of the ungodly shall perish. (兩節)
4. He either does not or will understand the orders given to him. (兩節)
5. How to do this or how to do that was never explained to us, and so we did neither. (*Two clauses.*)
6. He acts like a child; for now he laughs, and then he cries; he goes first here, and then there; and no one knows what to do with him. (*Six clauses.*)
7. They found the horse indeed; but it distressed them to see it; for it was lame. (*Three clauses.*)

複文分解之模範表

The Clause.	Connective.	I. Subject.	II. Attributive Adjuncts (to Subject).		III. Predicate.		IV. Adverbial Adjuncts (to Verb or Predicate).
			主辭	修飾詞加添辭	Finite Verb.	Object with qualifying words.	
<p>例</p> <p>A. His greatest enemy repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fact, etc.</p> <p>B. His best friends declared him to be innocent of the fact, etc.</p>	...	enemy	his greatest	declared	him	repeatedly.	
<p>Example 1)</p> <p>A. You must sign your name at once on that paper.</p> <p>B. Your son must sign his name at once on that paper.</p>	either	you		must sign	your name	repeatedly	
<p>Example 2)</p> <p>A. He is certainly the author of that plan.</p> <p>B. I am not the author of that plan.</p>	...	He		is	is	repeatedly	
	...	I		am not	am not	repeatedly	

IV. Adverbial Adjuncts (to Verb or Predicate).

III. Predicate.

II. Attributive Adjuncts (to Subject).

I. Subject.

Connective.

The Clause.

對子動詞之敘述辭

有形容字之敘述辭

修飾詞加添辭

主辭

連詞辭

例

repeatedly.

to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge.

his greatest

enemy

...

A. His greatest enemy repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fact, etc.

repeatedly

to be innocent of the fault, etc.

his best

friends

as well as

B. His best friends declared him to be innocent of the fact, etc.

at once

your name

you

either

A. You must sign your name at once on that paper.

at once

his name

your son

or

B. Your son must sign his name at once on that paper.

certainly.

the author of that plan

He

...

A. He is certainly the author of that plan.

certainly.

the author of that plan

I

...

B. I am not the author of that plan.

8. The spaniel frisked and gambolled about the lion, barked at him, would now scrape and tear at his head with his claws, then seize him by the ear and bite and pull; but nothing could aggravate the noble beast. (*Nine clauses.*)

9. The life of a mosquito is brief, but very active; the female lives for two or three weeks, lays its eggs and dies. (*Five clauses.*)

10. At length I to the boy called out;
 He stopped his horses at the word;
 But neither cry, nor voice, nor shout,
 Nor aught else like it could be heard.
 (*Six clauses.*)

11. Sir Ralph the Rover tore his hair,
 And beat his breast in his despair;
 The waves rush in on every side,
 And the ship sinks down beneath the tide.
 (*Four clauses.*)

12. The Brahmans or astrologers promise success to the divers; for they expect a liberal gift of pearls as a reward for the happy sense of confidence imparted by them to those men. (*Two clauses.*)

13. At Venice he went with the greatest cheerfulness into the sick house, where he remained as usual for forty days, and thus exposed his life for the sake of his fellow-creatures (*Three clauses.*)

複文分解練習文之譯解

1. 他之全疲於此役者，適與汝同。
2. 非他則一定是他之友闖此門；因無別人有其鎖匙也。
3. 主既知正道，則邪道滅亡。
4. 彼所受之命令，他或並不理解或將不理解。
5. 如何爲此或如何爲彼，並不說明我等知，所以我等既不爲此又不爲彼也。
6. 他行事似孩子；乍而笑，又乍而號哭；忽來此處，又忽去彼處；且無人知其何爲。
7. 彼等實得尋其馬；但其見之而悲，因其馬已駭也。
8. 獵犬圍獅子而躍而跳，向之而吠，以爲今可以用其爪抓之而壞其首，然後咬其耳而捕之以囓以曳矣，但卒不能激怒此高尙之獸也(獅子)。
9. 蚊之生涯雖短，但甚活潑，其雌蚊生于二三週間即產其卵而遂死。
10. 最後我向童子叫；童子聞呼即停馬；但是叫也聲也喚也皆森森，更無他事堪聽聞。
11. Sir Rabph 方絕望，散披頭髮復隨詢；怒濤四面衝來急，無力孤舟沒浪中。此 Sir 是對於武士之尊稱，Rover 海賊之義，但此是作其綽號解，故帶入冠詞之 the。
12. Brahman (印度僧侶之族階)即占星者向業潛水者兩皆保其成功；蓋既以此好意(成功)之自信力而安其人之心，固以罕有莫大珍珠之贈物以酬彼等也。
13. 在威尼市彼以最大之歡喜而入病號，照例居留其處四十日間于是捨其生命而爲其同胞。Brahman 與 Astrologer 皆同一人。

(答案解剖表附於次頁)

§ 3 章三. ANALYSIS OF COMPLEX SENTENCES.

混文之分解

312. A Complex Sentence.—混文者，由主節與其附屬之一個或一個以上之從位節而成也。

節而不附屬於他節者，是謂之**主要節** (Principal clause)。

備考。——主要節不用接續詞或其他連結字為牽合，附屬節則否，學者據此點以為準，即可以區別出此兩節之界限矣。

313. Subordinate and Co-ordinate Clause 一從位節及同位節。——從位節為助他節構成之部分，而於他節中為名詞，形容詞；或副詞之作用(不具其形)。

同位節非助他節構成之部分，惟自成其文法上之完全形耳。

314. 從位節有三種：——名詞節，形容詞節，及副詞節是也。此三節之定義如次：—

- I. 名詞節者，對於他節為名詞之作用之節也。
- II. 形容詞節者，對於他節為形容詞之作用之節也。
- III. 副詞節者，對於他節為副詞之作用之節也。

I. *The Noun-Clause.* 名詞節

315. 導入名詞節之連結字，厥有三種：—

(1) 同位之意義 “*that*” 接續詞(參照 § 291 a)：—

We did not know *that* he would leave us so soon.

(我等定不知他別我等如此其速)

(2) 省畧先行辭之複疊副詞或疑問副詞：—

Where he is going is not known to any one. (複疊副詞)

(他去何處是無一人認知)

Let us inquire *whether* he will go to-day. (疑問副詞)

(待我等問他今日是將何往)

備考。——接續詞之 “*if*” 可以用作疑問副詞而代 “*whether*.” 如：—

Let us inquire *if* (= *whether*) he will go to-day.

(3) 省畧先行辭之複疊代名詞或疑問代名詞：—

Who steals my purse steals trash. (複疊代名詞)

(彼竊象之金鑿者盜竊瑣屑物耳)

I beg to inquire *who* came here to-day. (疑問代名詞)

余請問今日是誰來此呢)

316. 名詞節固爲名詞之作用，故得用於左舉之諸法：—

(a) The Subject to a Verb. (動詞之主辭)

(b) The object to a Verb. (動詞之賓辭)

(c) The object to a Preposition. (前置詞之賓辭)

(d) The complement to a Verb. (動詞之完成辭)

(e) In Apposition to a Noun. (與名詞同位)

(a) 動詞之主辭參照 § 22 (f)：—

Where he is going is not known to any one.

(他去何處是無人知之)

That he will coming back soon is certain.

(他確是不久將歸來)

Whom the Gods love die young. (諺語)

(神所愛者天死也)

(b) 動詞之賓辭參照 § 24 (f)：—

He promised *that he would soon pay back the debt*.

(他已允早日清還此債)

I shall be glad to know *when he will pay* it.

(余將樂聞其將于何時還之)

Perceiving *that a mistake he had made*, he yielded.

(彼知已所行之誤，他即認錯)

(c) 前置詞之賓辭參照 § 273：—

My success in future depends upon *who is placed over me*.

(余後來之成功，是賴于余上坐之人)

This book will sell for *what it is worth*.

(此本書將來要相當之價值)

Except *that he speaks too fast* he is an excellent teacher.

(除其疾言太過之外，他是一良教師)

(d) 動詞之完成辭參照 § 178 及 § 182:—

This is exactly *what I expected*.

(此是正爲余所期望)

My question was *whether there was any hope of his recovery*. (余之問題或將有復答之望)

This is *what no one can understand*.

(此是何人不能了解)

(e) 與名詞同位參照 § 20:—

The news *that he intended to come* gave us much pleasure.

(彼人欲來之消息，令吾等大喜)

The reason *why he was so sad* is unknown to me.

(其何而悲之理由，余則不知)

前例之“*that he intended to come,*”是與名詞之“news”同位，此所以謂接續詞之“*that*”爲同位之意義也 (§ 291 a).

317. 凡爲“*that*”(同位意義之接續詞)所導入之節而與其同位之名詞而不遞出時，則“*that*”常省略於動詞之後:—

It seems (that) *he is not clever*.

(彼似不伶俐)

注意，一若是名詞遞出時，則此“*that*”絕不省略:—

The fact *he is not clever* gives us much pain.

(彼之爲愚蠢事情令吾等人痛苦也)

此文是全然不通，因名詞之“*fact*”既是遞出，則其同位節之“*he is not clever,*”須以接續詞之“*that*”導入之。

318. 凡一文中引一人之語言而可爲動詞之主辭者，則必作名詞節之例看之：—

“I have seen this man before,” was the only thing that he said. (彼僅說過「余前見過此人」一言)

The sleeper started up from his bed, shouting, “I am bitten.” (睡者由其床起而叫曰「余被咬過」)

Examples of the Noun-clause.

名詞節之例

試指出左揭諸例文之名詞節，且詳言其何者爲動詞之主辭，或動詞之賓辭，或前置詞之賓辭，或動詞之完成辭，或同位名詞之不省畧者，又照其所脫棄接續詞“that”之處而填補之：—

1. No one knows when he will come, or whether he will come at all, or whether he is even alive.
2. How this came to pass is not known to any one.
3. What is sauce for the goose is sauce for the gander.
4. It is quite evident rain will fall to-day.
5. The Equator shows where days and nights are of equal length.
6. What is one man's meat is another man's poison.
7. You must know that the air is never at rest.
8. I think I shall never clearly understand this.
9. We heard the school would open in ten day's time.
10. The name “Volcano” indicates the belief of the

Ancient Greeks, that the burning hills of the Mediterranean were the workshops of the divine blacksmith, Vulcan.

11. Even a feather shows which way the wind is blowing.

12. Whatever faculty man has is improved by use.

13. The fool hath said in his heart "There is no God.

14. "Know thyself," was the advice given us by a Greek sage.

15. He did not know that his father had been shot.

16. The fact that you have not signed your name to a letter shows that you lack moral courage.

17. It will be easily understood how useful even the simplest weapons were to the first dwellers on the earth.

18. The question first occurring to the mind of a savage is how is fire to be made.

19. Common sense soon taught him that fire could be produced by rubbing two sticks together.

20. In chipping their flint weapons men must have seen that fire occasionally flashed out.

21. We learn from travellers that savages can produce fire in a few seconds.

22. He shouted out to the thief, "Leave this house."

23. We cannot rely on what he says.

24. It is quite evident you have made a mistake.

25. It was very unfortunate that you were taken ill.

26. He was a man of fine character except that he was rather timid.

答案及其譯解

1. When he will come, whether he will come at all, whether he is even alive 此三句是名詞節，而爲“knows”動詞之賓辭。

(彼何時將來，或將全然來與不來，或尚生與不生，無人能知之)

2. How this came to pass 是名詞節，而爲“is”動詞之主辭。

(此事之如何而起，無人能知)

註.—came to pass 起也。

3. What is sauce for the goose 是名詞節，而爲動詞“is”之主辭。

(雌鵝之恥者，亦雄鵝之恥事也)

註.—一妻之恥夫之恥之意。

4. It — 即 that the rain will fall to-day 是名詞節，而爲動詞“is”之主辭

(確是今日將降雨)

5. Where days and nights are of equal length 是名詞節，而爲動詞“show”之賓辭。

(赤道是晝夜平分之所)

6. What is one man's meat 是名詞節，而爲動詞“is”之賓辭。

(在甲以爲滋養物者，在乙則以爲毒藥也)

7. That the air is never quite at rest 是名詞節，爲動詞“know”之賓辭。

(君須要知空氣是全非靜休)

8. (That 畧) I shall never clearly understand this 是名詞節，爲動詞“think”之賓辭。

(余料余將全不了解乎此)

9. (That 畧) the school would open in ten day's time 是名詞節，爲動詞“heard”之賓辭。

(我等聞得學校將于十日之內開學)

10. That burning hills of the Mediterranean were the workshops of the divine blacksmith, Vulcan 是名詞節，與名詞 “belief” 同位。

Volcano (火山) 之名聲者，乃表示古代希臘人信仰，而以地中海沿岸諸噴火山，爲 Vulcan 鍛冶神之工場也。

11. Which way the wind is blowing 是名詞節，爲動詞 “shows” 之賓辭。

(誰一片羽毛，猶能示風之方向)

12. Whatever faculty man has 是名詞節，爲動詞 “is improved” 之主辭。

(人類所有之能力，誰如何使用之皆得有所進步)

13. There is no God 是名詞節，爲動詞 “hath said” 之賓辭。

(愚者自吾子心曰，「世界無神」)

14. “Know thyself” 是名詞節，爲動詞 “was” 之主辭。

(所謂「知己」者，希臘聖人以之誦戒吾人也)

15. That his father had been shot 是名詞節，爲動詞 “know” 之賓辭。

(彼全不知其父之已被射殺)

16. That you have not signed your name to a letter 是名詞節，與名詞之 “fact” 同位。

(汝不認汝之名於信上，所以表汝的心性上之勇氣不足也)

17. I — 即 how useful even the simplest weapons were to the first dwellers on the earth 是名詞節，爲動詞 “will be understood” 之主辭。

(雖最粗末之武器，而在世界之元人，亦將容易知 要用處)

19. That fire could be produced by rubbing two sticks together 是名詞節，爲動詞 “taught” 之直接賓辭。

(擦兩木以起火之常識者，立刻可以教了他)

20. That fire occasionally flashed out 是名詞節，爲動詞 “seen” 之賓辭。

(人之研燧石以造武器之際，必時時見火星之閃耀)

21. That savages can produce fire in a few seconds 是名詞節，爲動詞 “learn” 之賓辭。

(吾等由旅行者而知得野蠻人發火於數秒中)

22. Leave this house 是名詞節，爲動詞 “shamed” 之賓辭。

(他向盜賊而大呼曰，「逆權此屋」)

23. What he says 是動詞節 “on” 之賓辭。

24. It — 即 that you have made a mistake 是名詞節，爲動詞 “is” 之主辭。
(汝是顯然全誤)
25. It — 即 that you were taken ill 是名詞節，爲動詞 “was” 之主辭。
(汝是其不幸而染病)
26. That he was rather timid 是名詞節，爲前置詞 “except” 之賓辭。
(彼除其稍怯弱外，是一秀雅之人物也)

II. *The Adjective-clause.*

形容詞節

319. 形容詞節者，對於他節之名詞或代名詞，而爲形容詞之作用也。

凡可以用爲導入形容節之連結字之種類者，僅爲複牒代名詞與複牒副詞而已。而此等複牒詞，尤重要用於限制之意義時然後可(參照 § 163)。

若複牒代名詞或複牒副詞而用於連續之意義時，則其文是複文而非混文也(參照 § 308)。

1. Among the men, *who came here to-day*, not one turned out to be honest.

(今日來於此處諸人中蓋無一人可證其是忠實者)

茲寫草体字之一節，是形容即限制乎 “men.”

2. We found the wolf lying dead in the very place *where (=in which) it was shot.*

(我等發見狼死於其被射殺之處)

茲寫草体字之一節，亦形容即限制乎 “place.”

320. 導入形容節之複牒代名詞，若其屬於賓位，而且用於限制之意義而非用於連續之意義時 (§ 13)，則屢見其省略，參照 § 179)。

The food he needed (=which 或 that he needed) was not procured without a great deal of trouble.

(彼人所需之食物，非經多致之艱難則不能得之)

試摘出左揭諸例文中之形容詞節，且指明被他節所形容之名詞或代名詞，若複疊代名詞有省略之者，則依其略處而填補之：—

1. Man has the power of making instruments, which bring into view stars, whose light has taken a thousand years to reach the earth.
2. The first thing that man needed was some sharp-edged tool.
3. The exact time when the theft was committed was never found out.
4. The man by whom the theft was committed has been caught.
5. The house we lived in has fallen down.
6. This is the same story that I heard ten years ago.
7. It's an ill wind that blows no one any good.
8. This is not such a book as I should have chosen.
9. He made his living by the presents he received from the men he reserved.
10. All that glitters is not gold.
11. In ponds from which but a week before the wind blew clouds of dust, men now catch the re-animated fish.
12. A river is joined at places by tributaries that swell its waters.

13. Of what use is a knowledge of books to him who fails to practice virtue?

14. Fortune selects him for her lord, who reflects before acting.

15. Springs are fed by rain, which has percolated through the rocks or soil.

16. Nuncomar prepared to die with that quiet fortitude with which the Bengalee, so backward, as a rule, in personal conflict, often encounters calamities for which there is no remedy.

17. I have seen the house where Shakespeare was born.

18. The plan you acted on has answered well.

19. They accepted every plan we proposed.

20. Surely the story you are telling me is not true.

21. Thrice is he armed that hath his quarrel just.

22. The night is long that never finds the day.

23. He travelled home by the way his father show him.

24. There are times when every one feels a little sad.

25. Such men as are false to their friends should always be avoided.

26. I forget to tell you the times when I shall return.

答案及其譯解

1. Which bring into view stars 是形容詞性，限制名詞之 instruments.

(人已有的製造望星器械之力，凡星之先被見於地球者皆在乎此)

2. That man needed 是形容詞性，限制名詞之 thing.

- (人類第一所需之物是銳利之器具)
3. When the theft was committed 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 time.
(盜賊所行盜之正確時間，是不能知之)
 4. By whom the theft was committed 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 man.
(行盜之人已被捕獲)
 5. (That 屋) we live in 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 house.
(我等所住之屋已倒塌矣)
 6. That I heard ten years ago 是名詞節，限制名詞之 story.
(此同樣之話余已於十年前聞之)
 7. That blows no one any good 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 wind.
(吹全無利益之風者惡風也)
 8. As I should have chosen 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 book.
(此是非余所選定之書)
 9. (That 畧) he had received from the men 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 present.
(That 略) he served 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 men.
(彼是藉人人之送禮而立其生計以為事業)
 10. That glitters 是形容詞節，限制名詞用之形容詞 all.
(光輝閃爍者，非黃金也)
 11. From which but a week before the wind blow clouds of dust 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 ponds.
(池中僅因前一來復風起塵飛，今則人人拾藻生之魚矣)
 15. That swell its waters 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 tributaries
(河因會合處處之支流，故能增長其水) 即河濶不擇細流，故能就其深之意)
 13. Who sails to practise virtue 是形容詞節，限制代名詞之 am.
(彼不修德，雖對於若干靈籍之智識究何用)
 14. Who reflect before acting 是形容詞節，限制代名詞之 him.
(命運者，擇先思而後行之人以爲己主也)
 15. Which has percolated through the rock or soil 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 rain.
(泉水是因雨滲入岩石或地層所滲養而成也)

26. With which the Bengaice as backward as a rule, in personal conflict, often encounters calamities 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 fortitude, for which there is no remedy 是形容節，形容名詞之 calamities.

(猛惡馬亞乃守孟加拉人之臨大難而不懼之慣例以從容赴死，蓋非如平日之鬪于個人的爭鬪而怯懦矣)

17. Where Shakespear was born 是形容詞節限制名詞之 house.

(余見斯鄒亞所出世之家)

18. (That 略) you act on 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 plan.

(汝所行之計畫已奏功)

19. (That 略) we supposed 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 plan.

(我等所獻之計畫，彼等悉容納)

20. (That 略) you are telling me 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 story.

(汝對余所言之語確是不真)

21. That hath his quarrel just 是形容詞節，限制代名詞之 he.

(恃其道理而爭者，是較三倍之武裝也)

22. That nerve finds the day 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 way.

(無怪則是該夜長矣) 決無不明之夜之意。

23. (That 略) his father showed him 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 way.

彼依其父所指之路以歸家

24. When every one feels a little sad 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 time.

各人皆有略覺悲傷之時

25. As are false to their friends 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 men.

(如此欺其友之人應常避之)

26. When i shall return 是形容詞節，限制名詞之 time.

(余當汝以余將返之時)

III. *The Adverb-clause.*

副詞節

321. 副詞節者，對於他節中之動詞，形容詞，或副詞為副詞之作用也。

副詞節除接續詞之 *that* 而用于同位之意義外，無論用何個從位接續詞，皆可以導入之（參照 § 315）。

主節	副詞節	從位接之意義
He will succeed,	<i>because</i> he works hard.....	原因 (彼將成功，因其勤于勞動也)
He worked <i>so</i> hard,	<i>that</i> he was quite tired.....	結果 (他如此勤勞，則彼定十分疲倦)
He took medicine,	<i>that</i> he might get well.....	目的 (他已服藥，如是他可以復元)
I will do this,	<i>if</i> I am allowed.....	假定 (余若允為此，則余將為之)
He is honest,	<i>although</i> he is poor.....	對照 (他雖窮，但是忠直)
He likes you <i>more</i>	<i>than</i> (he likes) me.....	比較 (他愛汝過於愛余)
Men will reap	<i>as</i> thy sow.....	範圍或方法 (人有播種，將有收穫)
The sun will rise,	<i>so long as</i> the world lasts...	時 (太陽之昇，將與地感共長久)

注意。——從位接續詞已詳載於 § 291，就中揭載於複陳副詞及疑問副詞等名目之下，其所包含之從位連結字之特別種類者，皆學切勿忘之。

322. 接續詞 *though, whom, unless, till, if, whether...or*, 及 *while* 之後，其敘述動詞之 “to be” 是屢為省略：—

Though much alarmed at the news, he did not lose all hope. (雖則他聞此消息而大駭，然不至絕一切之希望)

Though *he was* much alarmed, etc. he did not lose all hope.

He sprained his foot, while walking in the dark.
(他於暗中步行時，而挫傷其足)

He sprained his foot, while *he was* walking in the dark.

His opinion, whether right or wrong, does not concern me. (彼人之意見，無論邪正曲直，皆無關於余)

His opinion, whether *it is* right or wrong, does not concern me.

This must be kept till call for.

(此是不可不保存之以備要用)

This must be kept till *it is* call for.

323. 副詞節由“*then*”所導入時，其敘述動詞不是常為述出，惟可由其屬節以推知之，或得由是借用耳：—

He loves you better than (he loves 略) me.

He loves you better than I (love you 略).

324. 複疊辭之“*who*”或“*which*”為示原因或目的之從位接續詞之代用時，其所導入之節，則成為副詞節 參照 § 163)：—

原因.—They should pardon my son, *who* (同 because he,) has never committed such a fault before.

(彼等應赦宥吾子，因他以前未曾犯過如此等過失也)

目的.—A man was sent, *who* should deliver (*that he* might deliver) the message.

(所遺之人，他可以達到其消息)

備考。——學者於此，可以注意於用複聯辭之“who”或“which”所導入四種之節，四種之節即如次：—

(1) 同位節 (Co-ordinate clause). 在於此節，其複聯辭是用於連續的意義 (Continuative sense). 參照 § 163 及 § 308. 此是屬於複文。

2) 名詞節 (Noun-clause) 在於此節，其複聯辭之先行辭是不述出。參照 § 315. 此是屬於混文。

(3) 形容節 (Adjective-clause). 在於此節，其複聯辭是用於限制的意義 (Restrictive sense). 參照 § 163 及 § 319. 此是屬於混文。

(4) 副詞節 (Adverb-clause). 在於此節，其複聯辭是用於原因 (Cause) 或目的 (Purpose) 之意義，此是亦屬於混文。

試指出下文副詞節(一節或數節)，明示何字或何句是被形容於副詞節，且詳言此副詞節之所示者是屬如何副詞的關係。

1. He will succeed, because he has worked hard.
2. Men engage in some work, that they may earn a living.
3. He threatened to beat him, unless he confessed.
4. He was always honest, though he was poor.
5. This is not true, so far as I can tell.
6. He likes you as much as I do.
7. He tried for a long time before he succeeded.
8. Let us go to bed, as it is now late.

9. He walked with care, lest he should stumble.
10. I agree to this, provided you sign your name.
11. Though he punish me, yet will I trust in him.
12. He returned home, after he had finished the work.
13. Prove a friend, before you trust him.
14. When the cat's away, the mice will play.
15. He persevered so steadily, that he succeeded at last.
16. I will let off this man, who has been well punished already.
17. He sees very well, considering that he is sixty years of age.
18. I gave him a prize, that he might work harder next year.
19. They deserted their former associate, who had become poor and unfortunate.
20. As the tree falls, so will it lie.
21. Ever since we left the house, it has not ceased raining.
22. I would be glad to lend you the money, if I had as much in my own pocket.
23. Murder, though it have no tongue, will yet speak.
24. Unless you leave the house at once, I will send for a policeman.
25. A jackal wife prowling about the suburbs of a town, slipped into an indigo tank; and not being able to get out he laid himself down, so that he might be taken for dead.

26. The owner of the tank, when he beheld what seemed to be a dead jackal, carried the body into the jungle and there flung it down.

27. This one fact, if closely examined, proves the man to be guilty.

28. He is an honest man, though poor; and industrious, though old and rather infirm.

29. Better to reign in hell than serve in heaven.—*Milton*.

30. If the trunk of a tree, when young and pliable, is not made to grow straight, it cannot be straightened afterward, when old and stiff.

31. A rabbit cannot run so swiftly as a hare; but it is more skilful than a hare in digging the ground and boring holes under the earth.

32. The wild grey rabbit is not large as the tame rabbit kept in a cage.

答 案 及 其 譯 解

1. because he has work hard 是副詞節，記述原因或理由之意，而，容動詞之 succeed.

(譯意見前)

2. that they might earn a living 是副詞節，記述目的之意，形容動詞之 engage. (人而從事于事業，則可以儲其生活費)

3. unless he confessed 是副詞節，述假定之意，形容...詞之 th entered.

(若他不辯白，彼則打他而為脅迫)

4. though he was poor 是副詞節，述對照或讓步之意，形容...成辭之 honest.

(彼雖則是貧窮， 常忠直)

5. so far as I am tell 是副詞節，述範圍之意，形容完成辭形容詞之 true.
(以余所知，此事是不寔也)
6. as much as I do 是副詞節，述範圍之意，形容動詞之 likes.
(他好汝，如余好汝之深)
7. before he succeeded 是副詞節，述時之意，形容動詞之 tried.
(他於未成功以前，蓋已勤勵久矣)
8. as it is now late 是副詞節，述理由之意，形容動詞之 go.
(我就寢罷，因夜已深矣)
9. lest he should stumble 是副詞節，述目的之意，形容 with care 一句。
(他行路謹慎，故不至蹶跌)
10. provided you sign your name 是副詞節，述假定之意，形容動詞之 agree
(若汝署汝之名，余即表同情)
11. though he punish me 是副詞節，述反照之意，形容動詞之 will trust.
(彼雖則罰余，但余仍信賴于彼)
12. after he had finished the work 是副詞節，述時之意，形容動詞之 return.
(他完就其工事後，他就回家)
13. before you trust him 是副詞節，述時之意，形容動詞之 prove.
(試過其可爲朋友，然後好信賴他)，擇人而交之意。
14. when the cat's (=cat is) away 是副詞節，述時之意，形容 詞之 play
(譯解見前)
15. that he succeeded at last 是副詞節，述結果之意，形容副詞句之 so
steadily. (忍耐此如其堅定，故卒至能成功)
16. who (=because he has been well punished already 是副詞節，述原因之
意，形容動詞之 let off (參照 § 24). (余將放去此人，因其已受充分之罰)
17. considering that he is sixty years of age 是副詞節，述對照之意，形容副
詞句之 very well. (考其年齡已六十歲，然彼精力尚甚好)
18. that he might work harder next year 是副詞節，述目的之意，形容動詞
之 gave. (余賞他一賞，如此他於第二學年必更勤加 勵勤也)

19. who had become poor and unfortunate 是副詞節，述原因之意，形容動詞之 deserted. (彼等棄其以前之朋友，因他們變成貧苦及滯遲也)
20. as the tree falls 是副詞節，述方法之意，形容動詞之 lie.
(如樹木之倒，其勢必眠)
21. ever since we left the house 是副詞節，述時之意，形容動詞之 ceased.
(我等出門，至今雨仍未歇)
22. if I as much in my own pocket 是副詞節，述假定之意，形容完成辭形容詞之 glad. (若吾袋中有幾多金錢，余就樂借與汝)
23. though it have no tongue 是副詞節，述對照之意，形容動詞之 speak.
(殺人犯者，雖其無舌，猶將自辯. (it is murder 之代名詞)
24. unless you leave the house at once 是副詞節，述假定之意，形容動詞之 send.
(若汝不退出此家，余將呼警察)
25. while (省畧 it was) prowling about the suburbs of a town 是副詞節，述時之意，形容動詞之 slipped.
(一豹在郊外盤旋覓食，因滑失足而跌滑崖池之中，於是不能起出，自己見必定死，乃橫臥于其崖)
26. when he behold 是副詞節，述時之意，形容動詞之 carried.
(池之主人看見死狼屍，乃與其到林莽中而投于其處)
27. if (省畧 it is) closely examined 是副詞節，述假定之意，形容動詞之 proves.
(此件事若嚴密調查，足以證明其人有毒)
28. though (省畧 he is) poor 是副詞節，述對照之意，形容形容詞之 honest
though (省畧 he is) old and rather indolent 是副詞節，述對照之意，形容形容詞之 industrious.
(彼雖窮，然一忠直人，且彼雖則老而懶，然其勤勞)
29. than (省畧 to) serve in heaven (省畧 is good) 是副詞節，述比較之意，形容完成辭形容詞之 better.
(仕於天國，不如仕於地獄) (即此為對等，勿為字後之代)
30. if the trunk of a tree, is not made to grow straight 是副詞節，述假定之意，形容動詞之 cannot be straightened

when 省略 it is; young and pliable 是副詞節，述時之意，形容動詞之 is not made.

when (省略 it is) old and stiff (是副詞節，述時之意，形容動詞之 cannot be straightened.

(樹木之幹，當其幼穉及柔軟時而不拘之直生，及其堅硬後雖
攙之而不能使之歸於直矣)

31. so swiftly as a hare (省略 can run) 是副詞節，比 家兔與野兔奔走之
力，形容動詞之 cannot run.

than a hare 省略 is skilful 是副詞節，述比較之意，形容 more skilful
一句。(家兔雖不能如野兔之疾走，但其掘地穿穴于地下，則巧過野
兔)

32. as the tame rabbit kept in a cage (省略 is large 是副詞節，述比較之意
形容 so large 一句。

(野兔之灰色兔，不如家養于籠中兔之大)

Example of a mixed sentence analysed.

混文分解之例

The governor of the town, who was present, called out with a loud voice and ordered androcles to explain how a savage beast could have so forgotten its innate disposition all of a sudden, that it became converted into a harmless animal, which preferred rather to spare its victim than to devour him.

(市長出聲，以高聲呼 androcles 而時時其語切 至哉，已包涵其本性而變為
無害之動物，彼不但不食其犧牲，却愛惜之。

(以上各文分解表見六頁)

混文之分解表

The Clause. 節	Kinds of Clause. 節之種類	Connective. 連詞	I. Subject 主辭	II. Attributive Adjuncts (to the Subject). 修飾的加 添辭 (對於主辭)	Finite Verb. 有定動詞	III. Predicate 敘述辭	IV. Adverbial Adjuncts (to Verb of Predicate). 副詞的加添辭 (對於敘述辭 之動詞)
A. The governor of the town cried out with a loud voice.	主辭	.....	the governor	of the town	cried out	<i>nil</i>	with a loud voice.
I. Who was present	a 節之同位辭 (§ 308)	who	who	<i>nil</i>	was	present	<i>nil</i>
C. And ordered Androcles to explain	a 節之同位辭	and	the governor	<i>nil</i>	ordered	Androcles	<i>nil</i>
D. How a savage beat and how he forgotten its innate disposition all of a sudden	e 節(即 explain)之 名詞節	how	a beast	savages	could have forgotten	its innate disposition	(a) so (b) all of a sudden
E. That it became converted into a harmless animal	d 節之詞 節	that	it	<i>nil</i>	became	converted into a harmless animal	<i>nil</i>
F. Which preferred rather to spare its victim	e 節(即 animal)之 形容詞節	which	which	<i>nil</i>	preferred	to spare its victim	rather
G. Than devour him	f 節之詞 節	than	(it)	<i>nil</i>	(preferred)	to devour him	<i>nil</i>

Miscellaneous Examples for Analysis.

分解之雜題

1. Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the wicked, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful. (*Four clauses.*)

2. Nothing can describe the the confusion of thought which I felt when I sunk into the water. (*Three clauses.*)

3. A blind man, carrying the lantern in his hand and a pitcher on his shoulder, was walking along one night, when he was met by a thoughtless young fellow, who laughd at him and said, O fool! day and night must be alike to you: of what use can this lamp be to you? (*Six clauses.*)

4. If man had had a skin thickly covered with hair or wool, as an ape or sheep has, he could not have moved from one climate to another with comfort; and so he is made naked but not without the power of improving his condition, when, ever he may be. (*Seven clauses.*)

5. Even as the driver checks a restive steed, so do thou, if thou art wise, restrain thy passion, which, if it runs wild, will hurry thee away. (*Five clauses*)

6. Sometimes you may trace a river to a definite spring; but you very soon assure to yourself that such springs are fed by rain, which has percolated through the rocks or soil, and which the through some orifice, that it has found or formed, comes to the light of day. (*Seven clauses*)

7. If you put the end of an iron rod in the fire and hold it there, you do something more than heat that end; for you heat the whole of it up to the end that you hold in your hand. (*Five clauses.*)

8. In his seventieth year Louis Carnaro had a fall by which he broke an arm and a leg. (*Two clauses.*)

With some men at that time of life so great a hurt would have been difficult to cure or might even have occasioned death; but with Carnaro, whose body was in the soundest condition, it was cured in a very short time. (*Four clauses.*)

9. Whose keepeth the law is a wise son; but he that is a companion of riotous men shameth his father. (*Four clauses.*)

10. They expected that the king would either treat the matter as a pleasant jest or threaten the insolent darwesh with punishment; but to their surprise he was neither amused nor angry, but seriously attentive to the words of the darwesh. (*Six clauses.*)

11. Sir Isaac Newton, after deep meditation, discovered that there was a law in nature called attraction, by virtue of which every particle of matter that the world is composed of draws toward itself every other particle of matter with a force which is proportionate to its mass and distance. (*Five clauses.*)

12. After his schooling was finished his father, desiring him to be a merchant like himself, gave him a ship freighted with various sorts of merchandise, so that he might go and

trade about the world and grow rich, and become a help to his parents, who were now advanced in age. (*Seven clauses.*)

13. The rootlets at the ends of these fibres strike into the ground, and when they have become well fixed in the earth, the sap which previously was flowing downwards changes its direction and flows upwards. (*Five clauses.*)

14. Stern Daughter of the voice of God,
 O Duty, if that name thou love,
 Who art a light to guide, a rod
 To check the erring, and reprove,—
 Thou who art victory and law,
 When empty terrors overawe,—
 From vain temptations dost set free
 And calm'st the weary strife of frail humanity
 There are who ask not if thine eye
 Be on them, who in love and truth,
 Where no misgiving is, rely
 Upon the genial sense of youth. (*Twelve clauses.*)

分 解 雜 題 之 譯 解

1. 人不從惡人之勸告，又不行於惡人之說，更不處於無禮之色，則享天降之福。
2. 公沈溺於水時，死守與命如，何事不能記憶。
3. 一盲人手執一燈籠，肩負一木棒，步行於夜間，道遇一知思慮之少年，少年方自與其盲人曰，好蠢死，汝是不明盲及者色，此燈籠於汝何用乎。
4. 人若如彼或羊之生皮而蒙羊毛或狗毛，則自甲之氣與精力，移居於乙之

氣候地方，極不便利；所以人類造爲裸體也，但其所非皆有改其自己狀態之機能，

5. 汝若賢智而欲制抑汝之情慾，是恰如馭者之制悍馬，情慾者一綫，則汝亦共之而去矣。 even as 恰如之意

6. 有時汝洞河流而極一定之泉源處，見乎水之滲入石岩及通入地層；又或透於孔穴然後流出地面時，則汝自己便信此等泉水是由雨所滴而成也。

(light of day 地面之意)

7. 汝若以鐵棒之一端置入火中，且依然執之，則不僅在火中之一端發熱而已，因汝既執火中之一端全體，雖汝所不熱之一端，而熱亦達到矣。

8. 跽易下全盧當其七十歲之時，因跌而折其一臂及一腿。

在別個如此高齡之人，蒙此大傷之時，則必墜于醫治，或至於死，但在下全盧因其身體健全，故僅過極短之時間遂痊愈。

(whose body 之 whose 示原因之意，複疊辭也，即同於 because his.)

(same man at that time of life 生活于此時期之人，即如此高齡。)

9. 遵守法律者，賢其兒子也，反之而與人爲難者則辱其父。

10. 彼等臣服王之處理此事，必不視同兒戲，即不然，亦將以刑罰而脅迫有禮之回教侍矣，乃不謂反令彼等見而駭者，則見王不喜亦不怒僅頷耳而聽回教僧之所言也。

11. Isaac Newton 公沈思後，發見一定則之自然存在，即謂之吸引力也，凡稱及世界之物質分子，乃其半數與距離之比得力，而吸引力質之他分子以寄附于自己者，莫不本于定法則云。

12. 彼卒業後其父口復如自己一樣以短白，而給彼一舟而搭棧種種之貨物以廣行貿易于世界，苟幸而致富，則可以養彼有餘之有現矣。

13. 此等行根未燃之燭管，當其刺入地中而滴管泥土時，則將此向下流之汁液，亦是則這方向而上流。

14. 應時而生之聖域的女學，呼，彼愛彼時之名乎，汝爲尋世之靈，汝爲挽危之統時而返復成以壓服人而爭，不法律而爭時人沉溺於浮誇之誘惑爭而至於自由，人類競爭不絕分毫之計於爭勝，於人既不聽汝，信愛汝信汝信汝之妙齡至情，而不徒求之汝一時也。

分 解 雜 題 之 解 答 表

句	句之種類	連當辭	I. 主語	II. 修飾的 加添辭 (對於主語)	III. 敘述辭		IV. 副詞的 加添辭 對於動詞之 敘述辭
					定動詞	右形容語之 敘述		右形容語之 完皮辭
A. Blessed is the man	主 節	.....	the man	<i>nil</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>
B. That walketh not in the counsel of the wicked	A 節(即 man)之形 詞句節	that	that	<i>nil</i>	walketh not	<i>nil</i>	in the counsel of the wicked
C. Nor standeth in the way of sinners	B 節之同位 節	nor	(that)	<i>nil</i>	standeth	<i>nil</i>	in the way of sinners
D. Nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful	B 節及 C 節 之同位句節	nor	(that)	<i>nil</i>	sitteth	<i>nil</i>	in the seat of the scornful
A. Nothing can describe the confusion of thought	主 節	.....	nothing	<i>nil</i>	can describe	the confusion of thought	<i>nil</i>
B. Which I felt	A 節(即 thought)之 定詞句節	which	I	<i>nil</i>	felt	which	C 節
C. When I sank into the water	B 節(即 felt)之副詞 節	when	I	<i>nil</i>	sank	<i>nil</i>	into the water

節	節之種類	連結辭	I. 主辭	II. 修飾的 加添辭 對主辭	III. 敘述辭		IV. 副詞的 加添辭 對子詞詞之 敘述辭
					是副詞	有形容語之 敘述辭	
A. A blind man, carrying a lantern in his hand and a pitcher on his shoulder, was walking along one night	主節	.....	a man	blind, carrying a lantern in his hand and a pitcher on his shoulder	was walking	<i>nil</i>	(a) along one night, (b)
B. When he was met by a thoughtless young fellow	A. 節之同位 節 (照 § 308)	when	he	<i>nil</i>	was met	<i>nil</i>	by a thoughtless young fellow,
C. Who laughed at him	B. 節之同位 節 (照 § 318)	who	who	<i>nil</i>	laughed at	him,	<i>nil</i>
D. And (who) said	C. 節之同位 節	and	who	<i>nil</i>	said	E. 節	<i>nil</i>
E. O fool? day and night must he alike to you;	D. 節之名詞 節 (照 § 318)	<i>nil</i>	day and night	<i>nil</i>	must be	<i>nil</i>	alike to you, fool!
F. Of what use can this lamp be to you?	F. 節之同位 節	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>	this	can be	<i>nil</i>	of what use to you?

A. If man had had a skin thickly covered with hair or wool	if	man	nil	had had	a skin thickly covered with hair or wool,	nil	B 節
B. As an ape has (a skin thickly covered with hair or wool)	as	an ape	nil	has	(a skin thickly covered with hair or wool),	nil	nil
C. Or a sheep (has a skin thickly covered with hair or wool)	or	a sheep	nil	(has ;	(a skin thickly covered with hair or wool),	nil	nil
D. He could not have moved from one climate to another with comfort,	.....	he	nil	could not have moved	nil	nil	(a) from one climate to another (b) with comfort ;
E. And so he is made naked,	and so	he	nil	is made	nil	naked	nil
F. But (he is) not (made) without the power of improving his condition,	but	(he)	nil	is) not made	nil	without the power of improving his condition,	nil
G. Wherever he may be,	where	he	nil	may be.	nil	nil	wherever

句	節之種類	連結符	I. 主節	II. 修飾的 加添辭 (對於主辭)	III. 敘述辭		IV. 副詞的 加添辭 (對於副詞之 敘述辭)
					定動詞	形容詞之 實辭		形容詞之 實辭
A. Even as the driver checks a restive steed,	B 節(即 restrain) 之副詞節	even as	the driver	<i>nil</i>	checks	a restive steed,	<i>nil</i>
B. So do thou restrain thy passion,	主節	.....	thou	<i>nil</i>	do restrain	thy passion,	<i>nil</i>
C. If thou art wise	B 節(即 restrain) 之副詞節	if	thou	<i>nil</i>	art	<i>nil</i>	wise,
D. Which will hurry thee away	B 節之同位符	which	which	<i>nil</i>	will hurry	thee	<i>nil</i>
E. If it runs wild.	D 節(即 will hurry) 之副詞節	.....	it	<i>nil</i>	runs	<i>nil</i>	wild
A. Sometimes you may trace a river to a definite spring;	主節	.....	you	<i>nil</i>	may trace	a river	<i>nil</i>
B. But you very soon assure yourself	A 節之同位符	but	you	<i>nil</i>	assure	yourself	<i>nil</i>

(c) sometimes
(b) to a
definite
spring;
very soon

C. That such springs are fed by rains,	that	springs	such	are fed	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>	by rain,
D. Which has percolated through the rocks or soil.	which	which	<i>nil</i>	percolated	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>	through the rocks or soil,
E. And which comes to the light of day through some orifice	and which	which	<i>nil</i>	comes	<i>nil</i>	(<i>of</i>) to the light of day (<i>of</i>) through some orifice	
F. That it has found	that	it	<i>nil</i>	has found	that	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>
G. Or (<i>that it has</i> formed.	or	(<i>it</i>)	<i>nil</i>	(<i>has</i>) formed	(<i>that</i>)	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>
A. If you put the end of an iron rod in the fire	if	(<i>you</i>)	<i>nil</i>	put	the end of an iron rod	<i>nil</i>	in the fire
B. And (<i>you</i>) hold it there,	and	(<i>you</i>)	<i>nil</i>	hold	it	<i>nil</i>	there,
C. You do something more than heat that end;	...	you	<i>nil</i>	do	something more than heat that end ! (可參照 § 284 <i>b</i>)	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>
	B 節之各詞 節(即 assure 之賓辭)	that	springs	such	are fed	<i>nil</i>	by rain,
	C 節(即 rain)之形容 詞節	which	which	<i>nil</i>	percolated	<i>nil</i>	through the rocks or soil,
	D 節之同位 節	and which	which	<i>nil</i>	comes	<i>nil</i>	(<i>of</i>) to the light of day (<i>of</i>) through some orifice
	E 節(即 orifice)之 形容詞節	that	it	<i>nil</i>	has found	that	<i>nil</i>
	F 節之同位 節	or	(<i>it</i>)	<i>nil</i>	(<i>has</i>) formed	(<i>that</i>)	<i>nil</i>
	G 節(即 you do)之 副詞節	if	(<i>you</i>)	<i>nil</i>	put	the end of an iron rod	in the fire
	A 節之同位 節	and	(<i>you</i>)	<i>nil</i>	hold	it	there,
	主節	...	you	<i>nil</i>	do	something more than heat that end ! (可參照 § 284 <i>b</i>)	<i>nil</i>

節	節之種類	連詞辭	I. 主辭	II. 修飾詞 加添辭 (對於主辭)		III. 敘述辭			IV. 副詞的 加添辭 (對於動詞之 敘述辭)
				定動詞	有形容語之 敘辭	有形容語之 完成辭	有形容語之 完成辭	有形容語之 完成辭	
第一節	C 節之同位 節	for	you	beat	the whole of it	nil	up to the end	in your hand.	
	D. For you beat the whole of it up to the end.	that	you	hold	that	nil	in his seven- teenth year,		
第二節	1) 節(主辭) 之形容 詞	...	Louis Canaro	had	a fall	nil	by which	with some men at that time of life	
	A 節(動 詞) 之形容 詞	which	he	broke	an arm and a leg.	nil	difficult to cure,		
第三節	...	...	a hurt	would have been	nil	nil	even;
	A 節之同位 節	or	(it)	might have occasionally	death	nil			

C. But with Canaro it was cured in a very short time,		it	nil	was cured	nil	nil	(a) with Canaro (b) in a very short time,
D. Whose body was in the soundest conditions...	whose	body	whose	was	nil	in the soundest condition	nil
A. Whose keepeth the law	whose	whose	nil	keepeth	the law	nil	nil
B. Is a wise son;	...	A 節	nil	is	nil	a wise son;	nil
C. But he shameth his father	but	he	nil	shameth	his father	nil	nil
D. That is a companion of riotous men.	that	that	nil	is	nil	a companion of riotous men.	nil
A. They expected	...	they	nil	expected	B 節	nil	nil
B. That the king would either treat the matter	that	the king	nil	would treat	the matter	nil	C 節
C. As (he would treat) a pleasant jest	as	(he)	nil	(would treat)	a pleasant jest,	nil	nil

D	節之種類	連綴辭	主辭	II. 修飾的 加添辭 (對於主辭)	III. 敘述辭	IV. 副節的 加添辭 (對於動詞之 敘述辭)
D. Or (<i>that he would</i>) threaten the insolent darwash with punishment;	B 節之同位 辭	or	(he)	<i>nil</i>	定動詞 would have threaten	<i>nil</i>
E. But to their surprise he was neither amused nor angry,	A 節之同位 辭	but	he	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>	to their surprise,
F. But (<i>he was</i> , seriously attentive to the words of the darwash.	C 節之同位 辭	but	(he)	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>
A. Sir Isaac Newton after deep meditation, discovered	主辭	...	Sir Isaac Newton	<i>nil</i>	B 節	alter deep meditation
B. That there was a law in nature called attraction,	A 節(即 discovered)	that	a law	(a) in nature (b) called attraction.	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>
C. By virtue of which every particle of matter draws toward itself every other particle; of matter with a force	B 節(即 law)之形容 詞辭	which	particle	(a) every (b) of matter	every other particle of matter	(a) by virtue of which (b) toward itself (c) with a force

D. That the world is composed of	C. 節(即 particle) 之形容詞節	that	the world	<i>nil</i>	is	<i>nil</i>	composed of that	<i>nil</i>
E. Which is proportionate to its mass and distance.	C. 節(即 force) 之形容詞節	which	which	<i>nil</i>	is	<i>nil</i>	proportionate of its mass and distance.	<i>nil</i>
A. After his schooling was finished,	B. 節(即 gave) 之副詞節	after	schooling	his	was finished,	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>
B. His father, desiring him to be a merchant like himself gave him a ship freighted with all sort: of merchandise,	主節	...	father	(a) his (b) desiring him to be a merchant like himself,	gave	(a) him (b) a ship freighted with all sorts of merchandise,	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>
C. So that he might go	B. 節(即 gave) 之副詞節	so that	he	<i>nil</i>	might go	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>
D. And <i>(he might)</i> trade about the world	C. 節之副詞節	and	(<i>he</i>)	<i>nil</i>	(<i>might</i>) trade	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>	about the world
E. And <i>(he might)</i> grow rich,	C. 節(即 D. 節) 之高置符	and	(<i>he</i>)	<i>nil</i>	(<i>might</i>) grow	<i>nil</i>	rich	<i>nil</i>
F. And <i>(he might)</i> become a help to his parents,	C. 節(即 E. 節) 之高置符	and	(<i>he</i>)	<i>nil</i>	(<i>might</i>) become	<i>nil</i>	a help to his parents,	<i>nil</i>

句	句之種類	連結辭	I. 主辭	II. 修飾的		III. 敘述辭		IV. 副詞的 加添辭 對於動詞之 敘述辭 now.
				加添辭 (對於主辭)	定動詞	有形容語之 實辭 nil	有形容語之 定動詞 advanced in age nil	
G. Who were now advanced in age.	F 節(動) 之 詞修飾	who	who	at the ends of these fibres	were	實辭 nil	advanced in age nil	into the ground, C 節
A. The roots at the ends of these fibres strike into the ground.	主辭	...	he rootlets.	nil	strike	nil	nil	
B. The sap changes its direction.	A 節之詞位 詞修飾	and	the sap	nil	changes	its direction,	nil	
C. When they have become well fixed in the earth,	B 節即 changes 之 詞修飾	when	they	nil	have become	nil	well fixed in the earth,	nil
C. Which previously was flowing downwards,	B 節(動) 詞修飾 之形容	which	which	nil	was flowing	nil	nil	(a) downwards (b) previously.
E. And it flows upwards.	B 節之詞位 詞修飾	and	(it)	nil	flows	nil	nil	upwards.
A. Stern daughter of the voice of foot, O Day, if thou name thou love,	H 節之詞位 詞修飾	if	thou	O Day, stern daughter of the voice of foot	love	that name,	nil	nil

B. Who art a light to guide (<i>meu</i>).	who	who	<i>nil</i>	art	<i>nil</i>	a light to guide (<i>meu</i>).	<i>nil</i>
C. (<i>H/ho art</i>) a rod to check and reprove, the erring.	(<i>who</i>)	(<i>who</i>)	<i>nil</i>	(<i>art</i>)	<i>nil</i>	a rod to check and reprove, the erring.	<i>nil</i>
D. Who victory and law,	who	who	<i>nil</i>	overawe	<i>nil</i>	victory and law,	<i>nil</i>
E. When empty terrors,	when	terrors	empty	art	(<i>meu</i>),	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>
F. (<i>H/ho dost set</i>) free from vain temptations,	(<i>who</i>)	(<i>who</i>)	<i>nil</i>	dost set	(<i>meu</i>),	free from vain temptations	<i>nil</i>
G. And (<i>who</i>) calmed the weary strife of frail humanity!	and	(<i>who</i>)	<i>nil</i>	calmed	the weary strife of frail humanity!	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>
H. Are	..	I 節	<i>nil</i>	are	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>
I. Who ask not	<i>nil</i>	who	<i>nil</i>	ask not	J 節	<i>nil</i>	<i>nil</i>
J. If thine eye be on them,	if	eye	thine	be	<i>nil</i>	on them,	<i>nil</i>

句	句之種類	連結辭	I. 主辭	II. 修飾的 加添辭 (對子句辭)	III. 敘萬辭 有形容語之有形容詞之 定動詞 實辭 完成辭	IV. 副詞的 加添辭 (對子句辭之 敘進辭)
K. Who in love and truth rely on the genial sense of youth,	II 箇之名詞 定詞 I 箇 副詞敘進	who	who	nil	the genial sense of youth,	in love and truth,
L. Where no mischief begins.	K 稱詞 副詞	where	misgiving	no	is	nil

注意 一 本表中括弧內之草率字如 (that) 之類者補上省習司也如……之孔號者示其不應有之意如 nil 之肥號者示其可有可無而此時則無之意，以前各表亦效也。

第十一問題九行之 there 及第十四問題九行之 there 皆是帶入副詞，並參照 § 29 或 § 416 (a)。以其無甚意味，故不加入分單中。

I. 主辭	II. 修飾的加添辭	III. 敘述辭			IV. 副詞的加添辭
		動詞	資辭	完成辭	
1. A fowler	a) certain b) having fixed his net	withdrew	.....	.....	(a) to a little distance (b) for the sake of allowing the birds to come
2. The king	of the pig on	was passing	.....	.....	(a) by chance (b) through the sky (c) at this time (d) with a troop of followers
3. He and they	.....	caught	sight of the rice-grains scattered by the fowler near the net.	.....	.....
4. The king	of the pigeons	asked	(a) his rice-loving followers (b) this question	.....	then
5. Rice-grains	.....	are lying	.....	.....	(a) why (b) here in this lonely place?
6. We	.....	will see into	this thing	.....	.....
7. We	.....	must be	.....	cautious in our movements	.....
8. Pigeons	(a) one (b) excited (c) among the rest	gave	(a) them (b) bad advice	.....	.....
9. He	.....	told	them	to fly down to the rice-grains for the sake of satisfying their hunger.	.....
10. They	having flown down and listened to this bad advice	began	to peck up and swallow the grains	.....	against the advice of their king
11. They	all	were caught	.....	.....	(a) on their beginning to peck (b) in the net
12. They	.....	blamed	their rash and imprudent friend	.....	(a) then (b) for having given them such bad advice
13. They	.....	ought	.....	to have blamed themselves for having listened to him	rather

注意 I. 一凡同一欄內列舉 (a) (b) (c) 等數句者，示其有此種類也。如本表第一修飾的加添辭欄內之 (a) certain, (b) having fixed his net, 是示其對於第一主辭之修飾的加添辭有 certain 與 having fixed his net 之兩種。

2. 一同一欄內有數行而無前之記號者，示其全體同一種類也。如本表第三文資辭之 sight of the rice grains scattered by the fowler near the net, 是示此全體對於 caught 而為一種之資辭。

複文分解練習之解答第二表

節	連結辭	I. 主辭	II. 修飾的加添辭	III. 敘述辭			IV. 副詞的加添辭
				動詞	資辭	完成辭	
9.	A.	the life	of a mosquito	is	brief for two or three weeks,
	B. but	(the life)	(of a mosquito)	(is)	.....	very active;
	C.	the female	.....	lives	.....	.....
	D.	(the female)	.....	lays	its eggs	.....
	E. and	(the female)	.....	dies	.....	.....
10.	A.	I	called out	(a) at length; (b) to the boy; at the word;
	B.	he	.....	stopped	his horses	.....
	C. but neither	cry	.....	could be heard	.....	.....
	D. nor	voice	.....	could be heard	.....	.....
	E. nor	shout	.....	could be heard	.....	.....
F. nor	ought else	like it	.....	could be heard	.....	.....
11.	A.	Sir Ralph	the Rover	to re-	his hair in his despair; on every side, beneath the tide
	B. and	(Sir Ralph)	.....	beat	his breast	.....
	C.	the waves	.....	rush in	.....	.....
	D. and	the ship	.....	sinks down	.....	.....
12.	A.	the Brahmans	promise	success	to the divers;
	B. for	or astrologers they	.....	expect	a liberal gift of pearls as a reward for the happy sense of confidence imparted by them to those men	.....
13.	A.	he	went	(a) at Venice (b) with the greatest cheerfulness (c) into the sick-house, (a) as usual (b) for forty days, (a) thus (b) for the sake of his fellow-creature
	B. where	he	.....	remained	.....	.....
	C. and	(he)	.....	exposed	his life	.....

複文分解練習之解答第一表

(c)

節	連結字	I. 主辭	II. 修飾的加添辭	III. 敘述辭			IV. 副詞的加添辭
				動詞	賓辭	完成辭	
1. { A. B.	..... as well as	he you	..... .....	is are	..... .....	tired of all this work tired of all this work	..........
2. { A. B. C.	either or for	he friend person	..... his (a) no (b) other	must have opened must have opened had	the door the door; the key	...............	...............
3. { A. B.	..... but	the Lord the way	..... of the ungodly	knoweth shall perish	the way of the righteous.....	..........	..........
4. { A. B.	either or	he (he)	..... .....	does not understand will not understand	the orders given to him the orders given to him	..........	..........
5. { A. B.	..... and so	how to do this 或 how to do that we	..... .....	was explained did	..... neither	..... .....	(a) never (b) to us
6. { A. B. C. D. E. F.	..... for and and and	he he he he (he) no one	..... ..... ..... ..... ..... .....	acts laughs cries goes goes knows	..... ..... ..... ..... ..... what to do with him	..... ..... ..... ..... ..... .....	like a child; now, then, first here then there;
7. { A. B. C.	..... but for	they to see it it	..... ..... .....	found distressed was	the horse them; .....	..... ..... Jame	indeed;
8. { A. B. C. D. E. F. G. H. I.	..... and and and and but	the spaniel (the spaniel) (the spaniel) (the spaniel) (the spaniel) (the spaniel) (the spaniel) (the spaniel) nothing	..... ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... .....	frisked gambolled barked at would scrape would tear would seize would bite would pull; could aggravate	..... ..... him, him the noble beast	..... ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... .....	about the lion, about the lion, (a) now (b) with his claws (c) at his head, 同上 (a), (b), (c) (a) then (b) by the ear,

注意：一表中括弧羅馬字，是補其文之畧語，如第四文 B 節之 (he) 及第八文由 B 節至 H 節之 (he spaniel) 皆為補其所省畧之主辭。

單文分解之解答第二表

(b)

I. 主辭	II. 修飾的加添辭	III. 敘述辭			IV. 副詞的加添辭
		動詞	賓辭	完成辭	
14. The king	.....	told	(a) them (b) what to do	.....	now
15. (You 省畧)	springing suddenly up	fly off	.....	.....	(a) at one moment and with one united movement (b) with the net
16. Things	small	become	.....	strong	by being united among themselves
17. Elephants	even mad	can be held	.....	.....	(a) fast (b) by a rope made of thin blades of grass
18. Pigeons	.....	acted on	this advice	.....	.....
19. They	making a sudden spring together	flew up	.....	.....	(a) into the air (b) carrying the net with them
20. The fowler	.....	hoped	to see them come down again to the earth	.....	at first
21. They	.....	passed	.....	.....	(a) ought of sight (b) with the net about them
22. The fowler	.....	lost	both his net and the pigeons	.....	in this way
23. Pigeons what	..... .....	said is	..... .....	..... the next thing to be done	(a) then (b) to their king—
24. The king	.....	directed	them	.....	to a certain place
25. Friend	(a) his (b) the king of the mice	received	them	.....	(a) there (b) kindly
26. The king	of the mice	set	them all	free	by nibbling through the net
27. The troop	(a) whole (b) of pigeons	escaped	.....	.....	(a) thus (b) by means of union
28. Men	all	should profit	.....	.....	by this lesson
29. A chariot	.....	will not go	.....	.....	on a single wheel
30. A creeper	having nothing to support it	must fall	.....	.....	to the earth

Chapter XI. 第十一編

THE SAME WORD USED AS DIFFERENTS
PARTS OF SPEECH.

同一字而用於數種之詞類

- a 無定冠詞. The sportman shot *a* tiger.
(獵者射虎)
- 前置詞. He has gone *a*-hunting.
(夜去且獵)
- all 分量形容詞. He ate *all* the bread.
(譯解見前)
- 無定數形容詞. We must *all* die some day.
(譯解見前)
- 用于名詞之形容詞. We lost our *all* on that day.
(我等于其日失去我等一切物件)
- 副詞 *All* bloodless lay the untrodden snow.
(不踏之雪, 全無血跡沾染)
- any 分量形容詞. Have you *any* bread? (譯解見前)
- 分量副詞. We must stop and rest before going *any*
 farther. (我等須先停止及休息, 然後可向前行)
- 數形容詞. Did you bring *any* leaves?
(汝携有圓麵包否)
- 指示形容詞. Take *any* book that you like best.
(汝最中意何本書, 可隨便取)

as (a) 複牒代名詞： He is not such a fool *as* he looks,

(他之愚，不似外觀之甚)

As many men *as* came were caught.

(所來得幾多人，則幾多人被捕)

Yours is not the same book *as* mine.

(汝之書不如我之書)

(b) 複牒副詞(或從位接續詞)：—

時. He trembled *as* he spoke.

(他言時戰慄, *as*=at what time 在其時之意)

方法. Do not act *as* he did.

(莫如彼之所為, *as*=in what manner 在其方法之意)

範圍 { He is not as clever *as* you are.
 (他不如汝之聰穎, 前之 *as*=to that extent 至其範圍之意, 後之 *as*=to what extent 至如何範圍之意)
 Hot as the sun *is* we must go out in it.
 (太陽如何熱, 我等都要出外去, 前之 *as*=whatever extent 至如何範圍之意, hot as the sun is=however hot the sun is.)

理由. The air is now cool *as* the rain has fallen.

(因已落了雨, 故令空氣變涼 *as*=for what reason 因其理由也)

(c) 省略句中 (Elliptical Phrases)：—凡此 “*as*” 皆含有範圍之意.

I condemn you *as* a judge, but *as* a man, I pity you.

(余可照裁判官之權定汝罪, 然在余一人這講法)

(*As* a judge=*to what extent* I am a judge 余為裁判官之範圍, 即 *so far as* I am a judge 余為裁判官所及之意, *as* a man=*to what extent* I am a man 在余一個人範圍之意)

I will inquire again *as* to that matter.

(余關於其事件欲再問汝)

(*As to* = to what extent the question relates to that matter 問題亦關於其事件之範圍)

(*As* regards this journey, we can now decide nothing.)

(關於此旅行之問題, 我等今全未決定)

(*As regards* = to what extent the question regards this journey 問題亦關於此旅行之範圍)

Better 比較形容詞. My book is a *better* one than yours.

(吾之書是好過汝的書)

比較副詞. You are working *better* to-day.

(汝今所為, 比以前更好)

用為名詞之形容詞. Do not despise your *better*.

(莫蔑視汝之先輩)

Both 有定數形容詞. *Both* the men have arrived.

(兩人已到)

同位接續詞. He is *both* a fool and a knave.

(他愚而且惡)

But 副詞. There is *but* (only) one man present.

(唯一人在席)

前置詞. Who could have done this *but* (except) him?

(除彼以外何人能成此事)

I cannot *but* believe that you are lost (I cannot believe anything *except* that you are lost.)

(余對於汝失踪之事外, 何事不能信)

同位接續詞. He is a man of common sense, *but* not learned in books. (他是常識之人, 但不學無術)

從位接續詞. There was no one present, *but* (he) pitted

(=who did not pity) the lame horse.

(當座諸人者，無人憫其跛馬也)

(此文之“but”有複接詞與否定詞之効力，參照 § 162 but=who not.)

Perdition catch my soul, *but* I love thee.—*Shakespeare*.

(同 may perdition catch my soul, *if* I do not love thee.)

(若余不愛汝，則余之靈魂滅矣)

Either 分配形容詞。 He is ruined in *either* case.

(他無事不敗)

同位接續詞。 He is *either* a fool or a knave.

(他若非愚則必是惡矣)

Else 副詞。 We could not catch any one *else*.

(我等于彼之外，何人不能捕)

同位接續詞。 He has some real sorrow; *else* he would not weep as he does. (他是真悲哀，不然則不至于哭泣)

Enough 分量形容詞。 He has eaten *enough* bread.

(他食足麵包)

數形容詞。 We have *enough* loaves.

(余已有充足之麵包)

用爲名詞之形容詞。 We have *enough* to do.

(彼已有充分之事業)

Half 分量形容詞。 *Half* measures do not succeed.

(一半之計策不能成功)

用爲名詞之形容詞。 One *half* of his task is now done.

(他的半工業今已完竣)

分量形容詞。 He was *half* dead with fear.

(他因恐怖以致半死)

Little 性質形容詞。 A *little* below may give much pain.

(雖細小之打擊，可貽甚大之苦痛)

分量形容詞. He has eaten a *little* bread.

(彼已食少量之麵包)

用爲名詞之形容詞. Man wants but *little* here below.

(人類于現在世界, 所要不多)

分量副詞. Let us wait here a *little*.

(我等在此稍待罷)

More 分量形容詞. He eats *more* bread than you.

(他食麵包多于汝)

用爲名詞之形容詞. *More* is done than was expected.

(所成多于所期)

分量副詞. I like him *more* than (I like) you.

(余愛他過於汝)

數形容詞. More men came to day than yesterday.

(今日所來之人多于昨日)

數副詞. I saw him once *more*.

(余再見彼)

Much 分量形容詞. He has waste *much* time.

(他已浪費好多光陰)

分量副詞. I am *much* pleased with your son.

(余大喜汝之子)

用爲名詞之形容詞. You will not get *much* from me.

(由所得自我不多)

Neither 分配形容詞. I agree with *neither* side.

(余對於兩邊皆不表同情)

同位接續詞. *Neither* you nor I can do that.

(汝既不能爲之, 余亦不能)

Near 副詞. Stand *near*, while I speak to you.

(余向汝言時可立近)

前置詞. There is a fine tree *near* our house.

(一美麗之樹近於我們之屋)

形容詞. He is a *near* relative of mine.

(他是余之近親)

Needs 動詞. The earth is very dry and *needs* rain.

(地是甚乾燥且要雨降矣)

副詞. He must *needs* know the reason of this, § 266.

(汝務要知此事之理由)

名詞. Our *needs* or wants are few.

(我等之必要物即要求物是僅少數耳)

One 有定數形容詞. There is but *one* rupee left.

(僅剩一盧羅)

無定指示代名詞. *One* is apt to waste *one's* time.

(人究不免浪費其光陰)

有定指示代名詞. Your horse is white; mine is a black

one. (君之馬是白; 吾馬是黑)

Only 形容詞. The *only* dog I had was stolen.

(余所有唯一之犬已被盜矣)

副詞. I heard of this *only* yesterday.

(余僅昨日聞此)

同位接續詞. Do what you like; *only* (=but whatever you do) keep silence.

(凡汝所欲行者; 但守沈默就可)

Round 形容詞. A square thing does not fit into a *round* hole. (方物不能合於圓孔)

前置詞. Draw a circle *round* a given centre.

(畫圓圓周與之中心點)

副詞. The flies are flying *round* and *round*.

(蠅翻翻而飛)

動詞. Gama was the first to *round* the cape of Good hope. (加馬氏爲廻航好望角之元祖)

名詞. Men must go their daily *round* of duty.

(人類須日日輪行其義務)

Since 前置詞. I have not seen him *since* Monday last.

(余于前禮拜一以來已不見他)

副詞. I took this house four weeks *since*.

(余于四禮拜以前已領此屋)

從位接續詞. We must trust you, *since* you are speaking in earnest. (我等因汝已講得真寔,故須信賴汝)

Such 有定指示形容詞. He is not *such* a man as I expected.

(他非是余所期之人)

無定指示形容詞. He came to me on *such* a day.¹

(他來見余是無定期)

指示代名詞 You are a coward; I am not *such*.²

(汝是怯懦者; 余則不然)

That 有定指示形容詞. I am no admirer of *that* book.

(余非彼書之傾服者)

有定指示代名詞. The light of the sun is brighter than *that* of the moon. (日之光線 光過月之光線)

複體代名詞. The book *that* you gave me is lost.

(汝所與余之書已失之矣)

1. Such a day = some day or other.

2. I am not such = I am not a coward.

- 接續詞 {
- 結果. He aimed so well *that* he hit the mark.
(他覘得好, 故彼能射中目的)
 - 同位. He heard *that* you had come.
(他聞汝已來)
 - 目的. We must eat *that* we may live.
(吾人因欲生活, 故必要食)

Then 同位接續詞. I see, *then*, we ought to start at once.
(呀, 然則吾等應早出發)

時之副詞. He was better *than* he is now.
(他比那時更好)

Than 從位接續詞. I like this more *than* (I like) that.
(余好此過於好彼)

前置詞 {

- These workmen, *than* whom I have never seen
men more industrious, have left me.
(此等工人, 余未見有勤勞過之者, 並已別余)
- He was fond of any drink other *than* wine.
(他是好飲別種酒過於果酒)

The 有定冠詞. *The* ass is a dull animal.
(驢馬是魯鈍之動物)

分量複牒副詞. *The* more, the merrier.
(愈多則愈樂)

分量單純副詞. He worked *the* harder, because he had
hopes of success. (他望成功, 故他益勤于勞動)

Too 分量副詞. He is *too* fond of play.
(他太過好頑戲)

同位接續詞. We *too* must expect to die some day.
吾人須預期必有日而死

Well 性質副詞. He has done work very *well*.

(他已成其工事甚好)

用爲名詞之副詞. Leave *well* alone.¹

(捨棄好事)

同位接續詞. He has finished his work in time; *well*, I did not expect it of such a lazy man.

(彼人正畢其工業，然如此怠人，非余所期也)

What 疑問代名詞. *What* did you say? *What* house is that?

混合複牒代名詞. I do not know *what* you mean. (參照§ 159) (余不知爾何意)

省畧副詞. *What* with illness and loses, the poor man is almost ruined. (疾病與損失，可令貧人幾至零落)

Yet 同位接續詞. I have called; *yet* no one answers.

(余已呼過；尙無人回答)

時之副詞. You may *yet* (=even now, still) find him.

(汝尙可見他)

Chapter XII. 第十二編

COMMON ERRORS CORRECTED.

普通謬誤之更正

¹ Leave *well* (=what is *well*) alone.

COMMON ERRORS IN THE USE OF NOUNS.

名詞用法普通之謬誤

325. 領位語尾加添字，除其名詞為表人類及其他生命物或像人事物外，則罕用之 (§ 64).

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
Climb up the <i>houses's</i> roof.	Climb up the roof <i>of the house.</i> 攀援上去屋蓋。
Calcutta is <i>Bengal's</i> seaport.	Calcutta is the seaport <i>of Bengal.</i> 加爾各答是孟加拉之港。
Let us pick the <i>garden's</i> fruit.	Let us pick the fruit <i>of the garden.</i> (待我們摘園中之菜)
Beware of <i>life's</i> shortness.	Beware of the shortness <i>of life.</i> 注意生命之短促。
Look at this <i>letter's</i> signature.	Look at the signature <i>to this letter.</i> (請看此信之署名)
I heard the <i>multitude's</i> shout.	I heard the shout <i>of the multitude.</i> (余聞群眾之叫聲)
He is the <i>flock's</i> shepherd.	He is the shepherd <i>of the flock.</i> (他是此群羊之牧者)

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
Go out by the <i>house's</i> door.	Go out by the door <i>of the house.</i> (請從屋之門口而出)

326. 物質名詞除其用於普通名詞之外，不得用為複數 (參照 § 69).

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
He had a bag of <i>rices</i> .	He had a bag of <i>rice</i> . (他有一包米)
I picked up ten <i>rices</i> .	I picked up ten <i>grains</i> of rice. (余拾得十粒米)
There are many <i>dirts</i> on the wall.	There are many <i>spots of dirt</i> on the wall. (好多好之斑點在壁上)
He sent me many <i>foods</i> .	He sent me many <i> kinds of food</i> . (他寄與多種食品於我)
We want more <i>fuels</i> than that.	We want more <i>fuel</i> than that. (我等比他更要多量之燃料)
He drank <i>two milks</i> .	He drank <i>two cups of milk</i> ; or he drank <i>milk twice</i> . (他飲牛乳二杯或飲牛乳二回)
Ten <i>inks</i> are needed for the class.	Ten <i>inkstands</i> are needed for the class. (此級需十個之墨壺)
The cow eats <i>grasses</i> all day.	The cow eats <i>grass</i> all day. (牛母終日食草)
The rain has left many <i>waters</i> .	The rain has left many <i>pools of</i> <i>water</i> . (雨後留好多水窪)
Many <i>golds</i> were found there.	Many <i>nuggets</i> (lumps) of gold were found there. (多數金塊發見於其處)

327. 抽象名詞若非用于普通名詞時，則無複數（參照 § 69）。

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

He did many <i>mischiefs</i> .	He did many <i>acts</i> of mischief. (他爲過好多惡行)
He gave me many <i>advices</i> .	He gave me many <i>pieces</i> of advice. (彼獻好多忠言於我)
Leave off such <i>stupidities</i> .	Leave off such <i>act</i> of stupidities. (請罷如此愚蠢之行爲也)
He did many foolish <i>behaviours</i> .	He did many foolish <i>actions</i> . (他爲了好多惡事)
He learnt three <i>poetries</i> by heart.	He learnt three <i>pieces</i> of poetry by heart. 他暗誦三篇詩
He was fond of bad <i>companies</i> .	He was fond of bad <i>company</i> of bad <i>companions</i> . (他好結交惡友)
He has had <i>two sleeps</i> to-day.	He has <i>slept twice</i> to-day. (他今日已睡兩次)
He gave me a great deal of <i>troubles</i> .	He gave me a great deal of <i>trouble</i> . (他給我好多煩瑣)

* To learn by heart “暗誦”之熟語。

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
You have many <i>choices</i> .	You have many <i>things to choose from</i> . (汝已選擇好多物)
He possesses many <i>skills</i> .	He possesses many <i>kinds of skill</i> . (他有種種之才藝)

§28. 形爲單數而義爲複數之名詞(參照 § 77).

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
<i>These cattles</i> are mine.	<i>These cattle</i> are mine. (此等家畜是我的)
<i>This cattles</i> is mine.	<i>This cow</i> is mine.
The vermin <i>is</i> swarming.	The vermin <i>are</i> swarming. (毒虫群飛)
The <i>swines</i> are lying down.	The <i>swine</i> are lying down. (豕是橫臥)
<i>These peoples</i> have gone.	<i>These people</i> have gone (此等人已去)

329. 名詞有全無複數者，至其或用于特別之意義時，則亦有之(參照 § 78).

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
He gave me many <i>abuses</i> .	He gave me many <i>words of abuse</i> . (他贈我等好多謾言)
Give me all the <i>informations</i> that you have received.	Give me all the <i>items of information</i> that you have received (請將汝所獲得一切報告之條款示余)
This room has ten <i>furnitures</i> .	This room has ten <i>pieces of furniture</i> . (此室有家具十件)

Erroneous.

Corrected.

They had three *offsprings*. They had three *children*.

(彼等有孩子三人)

Have you learnt the *alpha-bets*? Have you learnt the *letter α the alphabet*?

(汝曾學過字母之文字否)

330. 單數有時可以代用複數而表特別之分量(參照 §80).

Erroneous.

Corrected.

He gave me a *ten-rupees* note. He gave me a *ten-rupee* note.

(他與余一張十盧比銀票)

I shall bring a *three-feet* rule. I shall bring a *three-foot* rule.

余將携來三尺規

He had forty *heads* of cattle. He had forty *head* of cattle.

(他有四十頭家畜)

This is an *eight-days* clock. This is an *eight-day* of clock.

(此是一日撥之時計)

I like a *six-years-old* horse. I like a *six-year-old* horse.

(余好八歲之馬)

COMMON ERRORS IN THE USE OF ADJECTIVES.

形容詞用法普通之誤謬

331. Some any. — 此兩形容詞用法之差異，可參照

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

- He has procured *any* bread. He has procured *some* bread.
 (他得若干之麵包)
- He has *not* procured *some* bread. He has *not* procured *any* bread.
 (他已無何等之麵包)
- He has procured *no any* bread. He has procured *no* bread or
 he has *not* procured *any* bread. (他不得麵包)
- Bring me *any* water to drink. Bring me *some* water to drink.
 (拿若干水來余飲)

332. *Little, a little, the little* 此三種辭用法之差異，可參照 § 94.

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

- Little* money is better than none. *A little* money is better than none. (有些少金錢勝於無)
- He was sorry to find that he had *a little* money. He was sorry to find that he had *little* money.
 (他是見自己金錢之無幾而憂)
- He spent *a little* money that he had. He spent *the little* money that he had.
 他有些少之金錢都盡費之)
- I am glad I have *little* time left. I am glad I have *a little* time left.
 (余喜余尚餘些少之光陰)

333. *Few, a few, the few* 此三種辭用法之差異，可參照 § 99.

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

He was glad to have *a few* books. He was glad to have *a few* books.

(他是喜得幾本書)

I was sorry to have *a few* rupees. I was sorry to have *few* rupees.

(余囊中之盧不多)

He read *a few* books that he had. He read *the few* books that he had.

(他悉讀其所有無幾之書籍)

I wish you would stay here *a few* days. I wish you would stay here *a few* days.

(余願汝滯留於此處數日)

Few remarks from him will not be out of place. *A few* remarks from him will not be out of place.

(由彼處來之數語，都算為適切)

334. 前置詞之 “of” 是省略於集合數名詞之後 (參照 §§ 100 101).

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

I have *a dozen of* sheep. I have *a dozen* sheep.

(余有十二頭羊)

He lived almost *a hundred of* years. He lived almost *a hundred* years.

(他生活幾及百年)

A ship will not last *a thousand of* years. A ship will not last *a thousand* years.

(一隻船不能耐用千年)

Few men have *a million of* pounds. Few men have *a million* pounds.

(有百萬磅金之人，僅少數耳)

335. **A, an.** —— 此兩冠詞在於子音與母音之前之異用，可參照 § 104.

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

A clock is *an* useful thing.

A clock is *a* useful thing.

(時計爲有用物)

He is *an* European.

He is *a* European.

(他是一歐羅巴人)

He wrote *a* historical book.

He wrote *an* historical book.

(他編輯一歷史書)

He is *an* one-eyed man.

He is *a* one-eyed man.

(他是單眼之人)

336. **Each; every, etc.** —— 分配形容詞之用法，宜參照 § 110.

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

They surrounded him on every *sides*.

They surrounded him on every *side*.

(彼等由各方面圍他)

Of the two men lying in hospital *every one* is recovering.

Of the two men lying in hospital, *each* is recovering.

(臥病於病院之兩人，現各復元)

The two men struck *one another*.

The two men struck *each other*. (兩人相打)

They all helped *each other*.

They all helped *one another*.

(彼等皆互相幫助)

337. 形容詞比較級之用法，宜參照 § 315.

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
He is <i>tall</i> than you.	He is <i>taller</i> than you. (他高過汝)
He is taller <i>from</i> you.	He is taller <i>than</i> you.
He is the <i>tallest</i> of the two.	He is the <i>taller</i> of the two. (他是兩人中之畧高者)
This stick is <i>more longer</i> than • that that	This stick is the <i>longer</i> than (此杖長于彼杖)
This boy is more clever <i>all</i> the boys.	This boy is more clever than <i>all the other</i> boys. (此童子聰穎過其他之童子)
This book is <i>more preferable</i> <i>than</i> that	This book is <i>preferable</i> to that. (此書比那書更好)
This book is easier <i>of</i> that.	This book is easier <i>than</i> that. (此書是淺易過那書)

338. 拉腊丁語比較級之次，是不用“than”而用“to,”宜參照 § 137.

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
His strength is superior <i>than</i> mine.	His strength is superior <i>to</i> mine. (彼之臂力勝過我)
Your height is inferior <i>than</i> mine.	Your height is inferior <i>to</i> mine. (汝之尊貴不及我)
This man is senior <i>than</i> that.	This man is senior <i>to</i> that. (此人年高過彼人)
This event is prior <i>than</i> that.	This event is prior <i>to</i> that. (此事先於彼事)
Your son is junior <i>than</i> mine.	Your son is junior <i>to</i> mine. (汝之子年幼過余之子)

339. 形容詞之最高級，宜參照 § 136.

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

This road is the *most shortest* of all.
 of all. (此道為最近之道)

This road is shorter than *all* of them.
 of them. (此道比其他之道最近)

Iron is the *useful* metal than all.
 all. (鐵為金類中之最大用者)

That was *unkindest* cut of all.
 all. 彼是最不仁之舉動也)

He gained *a first* prize.
 He gained *the first* prize.
 (他得第一等賞格)

注意。——最高級之前，可常用有定冠詞之 “*the*,” 而決不可用無定冠詞。

340. 凡最高級不可等用於冠有副詞 “*very*” 之原級意義。*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

He wrote a *best* book.
 He wrote a *very good* book.
 (彼著一甚好書)

He is a *worst* scholar.
 He is a *very bad* scholar.
 (彼是一甚劣學者)

This is a *happiest* world after all.
 This is a *very happy* world after all.
 (現在世界，到底是最幸福之世界也)

* Cut 肆無禮之言，傷人之感情等事。

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

You have a *clearest* style of writing. You have a *very clear* style of writing.

(汝之筆法，甚是明瞭之筆法也)

COMMON ERRORS IN THE USE OF ARTICLES.

冠詞用法普通之誤謬

341. 通例於單數普通名詞之前，宜置有定冠詞或無定冠詞(參照 § 115).

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

I saw *dog* coming towards me. I saw *a dog* (或 *the dog*) coming towards me.

余見一犬向余而來

He shot large *tiger* to-day. He shot *a large tiger* to-day.

(他今日射殺一大虎)

He ordered *servant* to leave *room*. He ordered *the servant* to leave *the room*.

(他命令僕人離去此室)

Dead *man* tells no tales. *A dead man* tells no tales.

(死人不可語)

Live *ass* is better than dead *lion*. *A live ass* is better than *a dead lion*. 活驢勝過死獅

India is large *peninsula*. India is *a large peninsula*.

(印度是一島國)

342. 普通名詞用於複數時，設非論者欲特指其事物時，則不宜置有定冠詞於其前(參照 § 119).

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
<i>The storks</i> gobble up frogs.	<i>Storks</i> gobble up frogs. (鴉吞蛙)
<i>The men</i> are rational beings.	<i>Men</i> are rational beings. (人類為具道理之動物)
We cannot easily live without <i>the houses</i> .	We cannot easily live without <i>houses</i> . (吾人未易能為無房屋之生活)
Oil is produced from <i>the olives</i> .	Oil is produced from <i>olives</i> . (油從橄欖而產出)
Language consists of <i>the words</i> .	Language consists of <i>words</i> . (國語者由言語而成也)
All <i>the men</i> are mortal.	All <i>men</i> are mortal. (凡人皆必歸於死)

343. 物質名詞之前，無論有定冠詞及無定冠詞，皆不宜用之(參照 § 117).

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
You should use <i>a seasoned timber</i> for making a door.	You should use seasoned <i>timber</i> for making a door. (汝可用乾材木造門)
Most men are fond of <i>the bread</i> .	Most men are fond of <i>bread</i> . (多數人愛麵包)
<i>The honey</i> is made by bees.	<i>Honey</i> is made by bees. (蜂蜜由蜜蜂所造)

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

You can stick this down with a *gum*. You can stick this down with *gum*. (汝可以用膠粘合此毛紙)

The charcoal throws out much heat. *Charcoal* throws out much heat. (木炭發出好多熱)

Some men never eat a *flesh*. Some men never eat *flesh*. (有人總不食肉)

344. 物質名詞用於單數普通名詞時 (參照 § 117), 則又不可不置冠詞於其前,

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

I am fond of strolling in *the wood*. I am fond of strolling in *the wood*. (余喜步遊於林中)

Slate is used for writing on. *A slate* is used for writing on. (石板用作寫字)

Hand me *potato*. Hand me *a potato*. (遞余以薯片薯棍)

Fire broke out in our village. *A fire* broke out in our village. (火起於我輩之村)

Do not lose *precious stone*. Do not lose *the precious stone*. (勿失此寶石)

345. 抽象名詞用於純然一說之意義時, 則不置冠詞於其前 (參照 § 117).

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

The envy is an evil passion. *Envy* is an evil passion. (嫉忌者, 惡情也)

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
I am fond of <i>a walking</i> in the fields.	I am fond of <i>walking</i> in the fields. (余喜行於田野)
He is not fond of <i>the mathematics</i> .	He is not fond of <i>mathematics</i> . (彼不好致學)
He always practised <i>the justice</i> .	He always practised <i>justice</i> . (彼常遵行公正道)
<i>The speech</i> is one of our best faculties.	<i>Speech</i> is one of our best faculties. (辯論者, 吾人最上能力之一也)

346. 抽象名詞爲必要特別示其性質, 狀態或動作時, 則宜置有定冠詞於其前.

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
<i>Envy</i> of malicious persons is cruel.	<i>The envy</i> of malicious is persons cruel. (嫉心人之嫉忌者, 刻毒也)
He is not fond of <i>mathematic</i> taught in that book.	He is not fond of <i>the mathematics</i> taught in that book. (他不喜那書所說之數學)
<i>Justice</i> of that man is well known.	<i>The justice</i> of that man is well known. (那人之公正, 是甚著名)
<i>Sleep</i> of wearied man is sound.	<i>The sleep</i> of a wearied man is sound. (疲人之睡已熟)
He understands <i>grammar</i> taught in that book.	He understands <i>the grammar</i> taught in that book. (他已理解那書所說之文法)

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

Height of a man is seldom more than six feet. *The heigot* of a man is seldom more than six feet.

(人之身材, 罕有超出六尺以上)

347. 抽象名詞用於單數普通名詞時(參照 § 117), 則無論有定無定之冠詞, 皆可置之於其前.

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

He gave very wise *judgment*. He gave *a* very wise *judgment*.

(彼下極賢明之判斷)

He made very good *speech*. He made *a* very good *speech*.

(他演流麗之議論)

You are not *justice* of the high court. You are not *a justice* of the high court.

(君非高等裁判所之裁判官)

My son, I fear, is not *genius*. My son, I fear, is not *a genius*.

(余恐吾子非才子)

Your daughter is quite *beauty*. Your daughter is quite *a beauty*. (令息是十分美人)

Your conduct will be blame by *authorities*. Your conduct will be blame by the *authorities*.

(汝之行為將被官吏譴責)

348. 固有名詞用於單數普通名詞時, 則要置冠詞於其前(參照 § 117).

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

He was *Kalidas* of his country. He was *the Kalidas* of his country. (他是其國之加列打)

註.—Kalidas 是印度之大詩人，其名雖屬於固有，但此處是用於普通名詞之義，故要冠詞，以下做此。

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

Csar of Russia rules a great Empire. *The Csar* of Russia rule a great Empire.

俄皇統御一大帝國

He is *Daniel* in wisdom. He is *a Daniel* in wisdom.

（彼是有智慧之大尼爾）

You are almost *Newton* in your knowledge of astronomy. You are almost *a Newton* in your knowledge of astronomy.

汝天文學造，幾爲紐頓矣。

349 固有名詞於示河川，群島，連山，海峽，海灣，洋海時，宜置有定冠詞於其前、參照 § 128)。

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

Ganges has overflowed its banks. *The Ganges* has overflowed its banks. （恒河汎溢其河岸）

Andamans are a group of islands. *The Andamans* are a group of islands.

（安達曼者一羣島也）

Vindhyas are a range of mountains. *The Vindhyas* are a range of mountains.

（維德耶者一連山也）

a Palk Straits separates India from Ceylon. *The Palk Straits* separate India from Ceylon.

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

(伯爾克海峽者，印度與錫倫島之分界也)

Gulf of Cambay is on the west coast of India.

The Gulf of Cambay is on the west coast of India.

(甘密遜灣是在於印度之西岸)

Bay of Bengal separates India from Burma.

The Bay of Bengal separates India from Burma.

(孟加拉灣者，印度與緬甸之分界也)

Arabian Sea separates India from Africa.

The Arabian Sea separates India from Africa.

(亞刺比亞海者，是印度與亞非利加之分界)

Indian Ocean separates Australia from Africa.

The Indian Ocean separates Australia from Africa.

(印度洋是澳洲與非洲之分界)

350. 固有名詞示單獨島或單獨山之名時，則不置有定冠詞于其前(參照 § 120).

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

The Mount Everest is the highest peak in the world.

Mount Everest is the highest peak in the world.

(伊薩拉新山者，世界之最高峯也)

The Mount Abu is in Rajputama.

Mount Abu is in Rajputama.

(阿拉山是在拉吉普塔馬)

The Ceylon is beautiful island.

Ceylon is a beautiful island.

(錫倫是英屬島)

Scotland is in the northern

Scotland is in the northern

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
part of <i>the</i> Great Britain.	part of Great Britain. (蘇格蘭是在大不列顛之北部)

COMMON ERRORS IN THE USE OF PRONOUNS.

代名詞用法普通之謬誤

351. 領位代名詞之形，是從其位置與用法而定之(參照 § 145).

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
I am <i>yours</i> humble servant.	*I am <i>your</i> humble servant. 余是汝卑僕
That horse is <i>my</i> .	That horse is <i>mine</i> .
Bring <i>mine</i> hat.	Bring <i>my</i> hat.
His horse and <i>your</i> are both tired.	His horse and <i>yours</i> are both tired. (他之馬與汝之馬兩者皆倦矣)
That horse of <i>your</i> is tired.	That horse of <i>yours</i> is tired.

352. 無定代名詞“one”之後之反應字，不宜用“his，”惟可用“one's”(參照 § 155 b).

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
One should take care of <i>his</i> health.	One should take care of <i>one's</i> health. (人須要注意自己之健康)

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

One must mind *his* own business. One must mind *one's* own business.

(人須注意自己之事業)

A man should keep *one's* own promise. A man should keep *his* own promises.

(人應守自己之約)

353. 領位代名詞不能代用與前置結合之代名詞.*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

I hope to receive *your* good report. I hope to receive a good report
report. of *you* (或 *about you* 或
from *you*).

(余希望得汝之好消息)

We shall be glad to get *your* good news. We shall be glad to get good
news of *you*.

(我們將喜得汝之消息)

Your separation distresses me. Separation *from you* distresses
me. (汝之別離是使余生悲)

His respect is always in my thoughts. *My* respect *for* him is always
in my thoughts.

(余之敬彼 當不離於余懷)

354. 第一人稱之代名詞與第二人稱或第三人稱之代名詞並用時，宜置第一人稱于最後.*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

I and James have come. *James and I* have come.

This room is for *me and him*. This room is for *him and me*.

(此室是爲彼與余兩用)

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

That dog is both *mine* and *his*. That dog is both *his and mine*.
(那犬是彼與余兩人之犬)

My James and *yours* are both. *Your* horse and *mine* are both lame.
(汝之馬與余之馬皆跛)

355. 人代名詞及指示代名詞，不宜省畧於他動詞之後。

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

The man is not here, shall I *call*? The man is not here, shall I *call him*?
(余呼之人是不在此乎)

I have a knife. Do you *want*? I have a knife. Do you *want it*?
(余有一小刀，汝要之乎)

Bring me the book. I am *bringing*. Bring me the book. I am *bringing it*.

As soon as I entered the room He *told* to sit down. As soon as I entered the room. He *told me* to sit down.
(余一入室時，彼即請余坐)

356. 複數代名詞中性之形，除表示人或像人事物之名詞外，無論何等名詞之後，皆可用之(參照 § 157)。

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

This is the bird *which* sings. This is the bird *which* sings.
(此是鴉也)

Are you the man *which* came here yesterday? Are you the man *who* came here yesterday?
(汝是昨日來此處之人乎)

Look at that ape *who* is Look at that ape *which* is

climbing up a tree. *climbing up a tree.*

(請看彼猿之上樹)

357. **Such.**——此辭之後之複聯代名詞，宜用 “as” 之形(參照 § 161).

Erroneous.

Corrected.

This is not such a book *which* I expected it to be. This is not such a book *as* I expected it to be.

(此是非余所期之書)

His behaviour was such *which* could not be pardoned. His behaviour was such *as* could not be pardoned.

(他之如此行爲，遂不能宥)

358. **Same.**——此字之後之複聯代名詞，宜用 “as” 或 that 之形(參照 § 161).

Erroneous.

Corrected.

This is the same mistake *which* you made before. This is the same mistake *that* you made before.

(此是與汝前之所爲者同一差誤)

This is the same man *who* came here yesterday. This is the same man *that* came here yesterday.

(此是同日來此處之人)

This is the same book *which* is yours. This is the same book *as* yours. (此是與汝之書相同)

COMMON ERRORS IN THE USE OF VERBS.

動詞用法普通之謬誤

359. **There.**——自動詞之主辭，若不在動詞之先而在動

詞之後時，其動詞宜用先導副詞之“there”以置於前(參照 § 29).

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
<i>Were</i> ten men in the boat:	<i>There were</i> ten men in the boat. (有十人在艇內)
<i>Seems</i> to be a very rough wind.	<i>There seems</i> to be a very rough wind. (似有暴風)
Outside the gate <i>stands</i> a man.	Outside the gate <i>there stands</i> a man. (門外立有一人)

360. 反身人代名詞，可省略於多數他動詞之後(參照 § 180 *b*)，但其他動詞之用於此，已變成自動詞矣。

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
He kept <i>himself</i> inside the house	He kept <i>inside</i> the house. (彼伏處於家中)
Move <i>yourself</i> over to this side.	<i>Move</i> over to this side. (請多過此邊)
He <i>made himself off</i> with the money.	He <i>made off</i> with the money. (彼携金逃亡)
The monsoon has <i>burst</i> itself.	The monsoon has <i>burst</i> . (強風驟起)
Let us bathe <i>ourselves</i> here.	Let us <i>bathe</i> here. (待我等浴於此邊罷)

時有省略反身代名詞而反致誤者，學者又要注意：一

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*He *availed* of the offer.He *availed himself* of the offer. (他藉此貢獻以利己)He *resigned* to his fate.He *resigned himself* to his fate. (他委身以任命)He *exerted* to win a prize.He *exerted himself* to win a prize. (他欲得賞而勞其身)

時有反身代名詞省略與不省略，其兩形皆合，惟其所加入之者，則能使動詞所示之動作，而加強其意義。

Emphatic form. (強意義之形)*General form.* (普通之形)He *rested himself* on the bed.He *rested* on the bed.

(他休息其身于床上)

(他休息于床)

I *engaged myself* in business.I *engaged* in business.

(余委身于事業)

(余從事於事業)

The clouds have *dispersed*The clouds have *dispersed*.*themselves.* (雲已自散矣)

(雲已散去)

He prepared *himself* for theHe *prepared* for the journey.

journey. (他預備其身而旅行)

(他預備旅行)

The fog has *spread itself* over

The fog has spread over the

the field. (霧已自散佈於野間)

field (霧已散佈於野間)

361. Negative Sentences 否定文：——否定辭之“not”除韻文之外，通例置於助動詞與主動詞之間(參照 § 204)。

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*He *loves not* his work.He *does not love* his work.

(他不喜其自己之事業)

He *came not* back to hisHe *did not come* back to his

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
post.	post. 彼不歸其職位)
He <i>is coming not</i> here again.	He <i>is not coming</i> here again. (他不再來此處)
He <i>not will recover</i> his health.	He <i>will not recover</i> his health. (他將不復其康健)
We <i>not must give</i> up work.	We <i>must not give</i> up work. (吾人莫中止事業)

362. Interrogative Sentences 疑問文：——此種文之主辭，除韻文之外，通例置於助動詞與主動詞之間（參照 § 262）。

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
Why <i>he told</i> that falsehood?	Why <i>did he tell</i> that falsehood? (他為何講假言呢)
How <i>you know</i> that?	How <i>do you know</i> that? (汝如何知彼呢)
When <i>you will return</i> home?	When <i>will you return</i> home? (汝何時回家呢)
Where <i>you lived</i> last year?	Where <i>did you live</i> last year? (汝前年住於何處)
What <i>study he likes</i> best?	What <i>study does he like</i> best? (他最好何種學問)
Which book <i>you will read</i> first?	Which book <i>will you read</i> first? (汝將先讀何書)
<i>You ever saw</i> him before?	<i>Did you ever see</i> him before? (汝前時曾見過他乎)
<i>He comes</i> back to-day?	<i>Does he come</i> back to-day? (他今日歸來乎)

363. **Shall, will.**——凡文之單表未來時之意義時，若非含有命令或意向之意者，則表第一人稱宜用 “shall,” 而第二第三人稱宜用 “will” (參照 § 207).

Erroneous.

Corrected.

I will be drowned; nobody *shall* save me.

I *shall* be drowned; nobody *will* save me.

(無人救我；余將溺斃)

I *will* receive my pay to-day.

I *shall* receive my pay to-day.

(余將今日受余之給料)

You *shall* sleep well, if you are thoroughly tired.

You *will* sleep well if you are thoroughly tired.

(若汝全疲時汝就能熟睡)

You *shall* remember what you read, if you read attentively.

You *will* remember what you read, if you read attentively.

(汝留心讀書，則無論讀何書都能記得)

He *shall* seem foolish, if he says that again.

He *will* seem foolish, if he says that again.

(若其再言如彼則其真似愚矣)

I think I *will* pass.

I think I *shall* pass.

(余以為余將及格)

I hope you *shall* pass.

I hope you *will* pass.

(余希望汝將及格)

They believe that he *shall* pass.

They believe that he *will* pass.

(彼等信其將及格)

Of course he *shall*

I have no doubt he *will* come.

come.

(余決其就來)

364 現在時完全形，爲結合有彼此意義之完全事件與現在時(參照 §§ 214, 215).

(a) 誤用現在時無定形于現在時完全形者：—

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

I am ill for two days.

I have been ill for two days.

(余已病二日而矣)

For one whole week there is
no break in the rains.For one whole week there has
been no break in the rains.

(已降雨一禮拜而無稍歇矣)

It is two weeks since I am
here.I have been here for the last two
weeks.

(余前兩禮拜已到此處矣)

I am long of this opinion.

I have long been of this opinion

(余已久抱此意見矣)

My son is ill all this week.

My son has been ill this week.

(吾子在此禮拜中全然臥病)

(b) 誤用過去時無定形於現在時完全形者：—

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*I did not yet finished the
work.I have not yet finished the
work. (余尚未完工)I did not see him from a long
time.I have not seen him for a long
time. (余已不見彼久矣)

I finished my work just now.

I have just finished my work.

(余今這完就吾事)

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

I *lived* here for the last three years. I *have lived* here for three years.
(余三年前已來住於此)

The grass *began* to sprout, The grass *has begun* to sprout,
 as the rains have now set in. as the rain have now set in.
(今因初雨, 故草亦始萌芽)

Set in 者始之發也。

(c) 誤用現在時完全形於過去時無定形者：—

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

Baber *has founded* the mogul qire. Baber *founded* the Mogul Em-
(伯復建設莫臥兒帝國)

Aurangzeb *has done* much evil to Mogul Empire. Aurangzeb *did* much evil to
 the Mogul Empire.
(阿哈德遣奸將多禍害於莫臥兒帝國)

The rain *has begun* to fall as soon down the wind went as the wind went down.
(風聲靜時而即降雨)

He *has not come* at the time when he was ordered. He *did not come* at the time
 when he was ordered.
(他不依其所命之時間而來)

(d) 誤用示過去時之副詞或句子於現在時完全形者 (參照 § 216)：—

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

The rain *has ceased* yesterday. The rain *ceased* yesterday.
(昨日已止了雨)

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
I <i>have finished</i> my letter last night.	I <i>finished</i> my letter last night. (余昨宵已寫妥余之書信)
This custom <i>has</i> formerly <i>been</i> much practised.	This <i>custom was</i> formerly much practised. (此俗例古時時已甚流行)
The parrot <i>has died</i> a few days ago.	The parrot <i>died</i> a few days ago. (鸚鵡已數日已死矣)
Our horse <i>has run</i> away in the night.	Our horse <i>run</i> away in the night. (我國之馬於夜間已逃)
I <i>have come</i> here this morning.	I <i>came</i> here this morning. (余今晨來此)
The sun <i>has set</i> at seven o'clock.	The sun <i>set</i> at seven o'clock. (太陽於七 鐘沒)
I <i>have matriculated</i> in April last.	I <i>matriculated</i> in April last. (余已於前月四月入校)
The famine of 1877 <i>has been</i> very severe.	The famine of 1877 <i>was</i> very severe. (1877 年之饑匪甚劇)

365 過去時完全形，常表他方面已開始，而此則已完成之動作或事件(參照 § 217)。

(a) 誤用過去時完全形於過去時無定形者：一

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
I <i>had bought</i> two books yesterday.	I <i>bought</i> two books yesterday. (余昨日買書二冊)

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

The sun *had set* at seven o'clock. The sun *set* at seven o'clock.
(太陽沉沒於七時)

The meeting of the 8th instant *had* unanimously *resolved*, etc. The meeting of the 8th instant unanimously resolved, etc.
(本月八日之會議，已全會一致決議……)

I *had sent* notice in December last. I *sent* notice in December last.
(余已於去年十二月送過牒)

(b) 誤用過去時無定形於過去時完全形者：一

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

He *was* ill for two days, when the doctor was sent for. He *had been* ill for two days, when the doctor was sent for.

(時至請醫生，他已病了兩日矣)

The sheep were scattered; for a wolf *entered* the fold. The sheep were scattered; for a wolf *had entered* the fold.

(因有一狼衝入羊群中，故羊各自奔散)

The doctor came to the patient who *was* long ill. The doctor came to the patient who *had been* ill.

(醫士已來看久病之病者)

366. 在於某辭之後或在于某文之組織，“to”字可以省略於單純無定法之前(參照 § 233).

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

I heard him *to say* so. I heard him *say* so.

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

- We saw him *to take* aim with his bow. We saw him *take* aim with his bow. (余聞他如此說)
- I have known him *to laugh* for nothing. I have known him *laugh* for nothing. (余已知其無爲而笑)
- You had better not *to remain* here. You had better not *remain* here. (汝不留于此更好)
- I had rather *to take* this than that. I had rather *take* this than that. (余寧取此勝于彼)
- He did nothing but *to laugh*. He did nothing but *laugh*. (他一無所爲，惟笑而已)
- You need not *to stop* here. You need not *stop* here. (汝無用留于此)

367. 自動詞之動名詞狀無定法，而用爲形容名詞時，必常用一前置詞於此無定動詞之後：參照 § 236 (6) 之備考。

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

- Bring me a chair *to sit*. Bring me a chair *to sit on*.
携一椅來余一坐罷)
- I want a stick *to walk*. I want a stick *to walk with*.
余要一手杖去散步，
- The boy must have a companion *to play*. The boy must have a companion *to play with*.
(此童子須有一伴相與玩戲，
- He had no bed *to lie*. He had no bed *to lie on*.
(他無床臥)

368. 自動詞之過去分詞，罕有用爲形容名詞；即用之

時亦不可置於名詞之後；而必置於名詞之前以形容之(參照 § 242).

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

There is no scent in the rose *faded* this morning.

There is no scent in the rose *which faded* this morning.

(今朝院裏之玫瑰花已無香)

I am sorry for the candidate *failed* in the last examination.

I am sorry for the candidate *who failed* in the last examination.

(余太息乎前次應試之落第者)

He is a candidate *passed* last year.

He is a *passed* candidate of last year.

(彼是前年之應試及第者)

369. 動名詞之前，其用領位之如何者是與如何而非者，可參照 § 250.

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

I was pleased at *him* coming back.

I was pleased at *his* coming back. (余喜其歸來)

He was amused at the *horse* running after him.

He was amused at the *horse's* running after him.

(彼因馬之在其後馳走而喜)

I ask *your favour* of sending me an answer.

I ask the favour of *your sending* me an answer.

(希為垂愛，復惠德音) 信札之用語

I depend upon the *wall's* being built.

I depend upon the *wall* being built. (余賴牆壁之築成)

370. 名詞無定法與動名詞，其意義雖同。（參照 § 44），然至其文爲要用前置詞時，則惟適用動名詞，而不適用名詞無定法。

<i>Erroneous.</i>	<i>Corrected.</i>
He persisted <i>to say</i> this.	He persisted <i>in saying</i> this. (他固執此說)
I insisted <i>to have</i> my fee paid.	I insisted <i>on having</i> my fee paid. (余堅持要余之給料)
We should refrain <i>to do</i> evil.	We should refrain <i>from doing</i> evil. (吾人須禁止爲惡)
The prohibited me <i>to borrow</i> a book.	The prohibited me <i>from borrowing</i> a book. (彼等禁余借書)
Do not prevent me <i>to work</i> .	Do not prevent me <i>from working</i> . (勿妨礙余工作)
I insisted on <i>him to go</i> away.	I insisted on <i>his going</i> away. (余主張他去)
I depend on <i>you to do</i> this.	I depend <i>on your doing</i> this. (余賴汝爲此)
Abstain <i>to speak</i> evil of other.	Abstain <i>from speaking</i> ill of other. (禁言人之惡)
I take this opportunity <i>to send</i> you a specimen.	I take this opportunity <i>of sending</i> you a specimen. (並乘此機會，僅將見本謹呈) 信札之用語

COMMON ERRORS IN THE USE OF ADVERBS.

副詞用法普通之謬誤

371. **Very, much.**——關於此二字用法之要注意者，厥有四事；如：—

(a) “Much” 爲形容比較之形容詞或副詞。

(b) “Very” 爲形容原級之形容詞或副詞。

(c) “Much” 之用爲形容過去分詞，比 “very” 更爲普通。

(d) “Very” 用爲形容現在過去分詞。

Erroneous.

Corrected.

I am *very* surprised at the news. I am *much* surprised at the news. (余聞此消息大驚)

This news is *mu h* surprising. This news is *very* surprising. (此消息甚爲可驚者也)

I am *much* sorry to hear this. I am *very* sorry to hear this. (余聞此甚悲)

I accept your offer *much* gladly. I accept your offer *very* gladly. (余領受汝之獻物甚喜)

He is *very* more industrious than you. He is *much* more industrious than you. (他之勤勉更甚於汝)

The air is *very* hotter to-day than yesterday. The air is *much* hotter to-day than yesterday. (今日空氣熱于昨日)

372. **Too.**——此副詞是 “more than enough” (過分) 之意，故不可作 “very” 或 “much” 之意而用。

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

- My son's progress is *too* great. My son's progress is *very* great.
(吾子之進步甚大)
- Sugar is *too* sweet. Sugar is *very* sweet.
(砂糖是甚甘)
- He was *too* distressed at his friend's death. He was *much* distressed at his friend's death.
(他大痛惜其友之死)
- A cow's milk is *too* wholesome. A cow's milk is *very* accurate.
(牛乳甚益於康健)
- Your spelling is *too* accurate. Your spelling is *very* accurate.
(汝之音調甚正)

373. Quite.——此副詞爲“completely”(充分)“perfectly”(完全)之意，故不可以之代用“very.”

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

- This bridge is *quite* dangerous. This bridge is *very* dangerous.
(此橋甚危險)
- Bad water is *quite* unwholesome. Bad water is *very* unwholesome.
(惡水甚害於康健)
- I was *quite* sorry to hear of his illness. I was *very* sorry to hear of his illness.
(余聞其染病而甚悲)

注意：一有時“quite”與過去分詞共用，而作“much”之意解，如“quite delighted”(甚喜)，“quite distressed”(甚悲)，“quite frightened”(甚驚)。

374 Little, a little.——“Little”是肯定之副詞，而有“not much”(不多)“not at all”(不盡然)之意。“A little”

是肯定之副詞，而有“to a slight extent”(渺小)或“for a short time”(稍間)之意。

Erroneous.

Corrected.

He was *a little* pleased at his failure. He was *little* pleased at his failure. (他不大喜其失敗)

I was *little* vexed at having failed. I was *a little* vexed at having failed. (余因失敗而略為煩悶)

375. By and by.——此副詞為“after an interval”(暫時之後)之意，故不可用於“little by little”(漸漸)，“gradually”(次第)，“one by one”(一個一個)等之意義。

Erroneous.

Corrected.

The visitors went away *by and by*. The visitors went away *one by one*. (人客次第別去)

He recovered his health *by and by*. He *gradually* recovered his health. (彼漸漸復元)

The water all flowed out *by and by*. The water all flowed out *little by little*. (水一滴一滴流出)

376. Of course.——此副詞句為“in the course of nature”(自然之勢)之意；故不可妄用于一般之確定意義。

Erroneous.

Corrected.

Of course she sings very well. She *certainly* sings very well. (彼女確是唱得甚好)

Did he win a prize last term? *Of course* he did. Did he win a prize last term? *certainly or indeed* he did. (彼於前學期得賞乎，彼確得了)

376 a. Yes, no.——答疑問者以“*yes*”時，則後所接之動詞不可用否定，答疑問者以“*no*”時，則後所接之動詞不可用肯定。

Question. = Is the sky cloudy to-day?

(今日天起雲乎)

Answer. — *Yes*; it *is* cloudy, 或 *No*; it *is not* cloudy.

(然是起雲)

(否，不起雲)

故吾人不能云，“*Yes it is not cloudy,*”或“*No, it is cloudy.*”

COMMON ERRORS IN THE USE OF CONJUNCTION.

接續詞用法普通之謬誤

377. That. —— 此接續詞必不可用于由引用文而成立之文，或複騰副詞及疑問複詞之前。

Erroneous.

Corrected.

He said *that* “I shall soon be there.”

He said, “I shall soon be there.”

(彼謂“余不久就到彼處”)

He asked *that* how long you would be absent.

He asked how long you would be absent.

(他問汝幾久不來)

Tell me *that* whether you will soon return.

Tell me whether you will soon return. (汝速歸來與否請告我知)

378. As well as no less than. —— 此等接續詞為強兩結合節中之前節意義，而與次節則全無關係！參照 § 289*b*。

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

He was no less *hopeful* than *confident*. He was no less *confident* than *hopeful*. (彼亦確信有希望)

He was *accused* as well as *convicted*. He was *convicted* as well as *accused*.

(彼不僅被告，而且被判爲有罪)

379. Not only, but also.——此等接續詞，爲強其兩結合節中之後節意義，而與前節全無關係(參照 § 289 c).

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

He was not only *confident*, but *hopeful*. He was not only *hopeful*, but *confident*.

(他不僅有希望，且深信之也)

He was not only *convicted*, but also *accused*. He was not only *accused*, but also *convicted*.

(他不僅被判，且被定罪矣)

330. Until, as long as, while.——表廻溯以前之時，是宜用“until;”表示長久之時，是宜用“as (或 so) long as”或“while”(參照 § 291 f).

*Erroneous.**Corrected.*

Until you work hard, you will improve. *As long as* you work hard, you will improve.

(彼勤勞不懈，故自能有進步)

He continued lazy, *as long as* he was seventeen years old. He continued lazy, *until* he was seventeen years old.

(他至于十七歲而仍依然懶怠)

Until the world lasts, the world will last. *While* (或 *so long as*) the world

earth will go round the sun. lasts, the earth will go round the sun.

(世界存在之時，地球亦將繞日而行)

361 **No sooner, as soon as** ——此“no sooner”與“as soon as”皆為同一意義。雖然，但於“no sooner”之次，須謹記用接續詞之“than”及助動詞之“do。”

Erroneous.

Corrected.

No sooner he *heard* the news, No sooner *did* he *hear* the news *than* he wept aloud.

或 *as soon as* he heard the news, he wept aloud.

(他一聽聞其消息就大聲哭)

No sooner he *died*, his sons No sooner *did* he *die than* his sons quarrelled over his property.

或 *as soon as* he died, his sons quarrelled over his property.

(彼一死後，其子就爭其財產)

362. **Unless. if.** ——此接續詞之“unless”為“if not”之意(參照 § 291 c).

Erroneous.

Corrected.

Unless you do not work hard, *If* you do not work hard, you will be plucked.

(若汝不勤勞，則將除汝)

Unless you have no objection, *If* you have no objection, I will come to-morrow.

(若汝無異義，余將明日來)

383. **Because, in order that.** — 表示原因或理由時，宜用 “because,” 表示目的時，宜用 “in order that” 或 “so that” etc (參照 § 291 *b* 及 *d*.)

Erroneous.

Corrected.

Men work *because* they may earn a living.

Men work *that* (或 *so that* 或 *in order that*) they may earn a living.

(人而勞動，如是彼等可儲其生活費)

He took medicine *because* he might get well.

He took medicine *so that* he might get well.

(他服藥，如是彼可以就痊)

Chapter XIII. 第十三編

SYNTAX. 文章論

§ I 章一. RELATIONS OF WORDS TO ONE ANOTHER.

言辭相互之關係

PARSING CHART. 解剖圖

I. *Nouns.* 名詞

Kind of Nouns. 名詞之種類	Gender. 性	Number. 數	Case. 位
Proper 固有名詞	Masculine 陽性		Nominative 主位
Common 普通	Feminine 陰性	Singular 單數	Possessive 領位
Collective 集合	Common 通性	Plural 複數	Objective 賓位
Material 物質	Neuter 中性		
Abstract 抽象			

II. *Pronouns* 代名詞

Kind of Pronoun.	Gender.	Number.	Person.	Case.
Pers. { Simple 單純 人代 { Reflexive 反身 Demos. { Definite 有定 指示 { Indefinite 無定 Relative 複體代名詞 Interrogative 疑問代名詞	Masculine	Singular	1st.	Nominative
	Femine		2nd.	Possessive
	Common	Plural	2nd.	Objective
	Neuter		3rd.		第三人稱
代名詞之性, 數, 人稱, 皆與其先行詞 (antecedent) 爲一致				

III. *The Case of Nouns or Pronouns.* 名詞或代名詞之位

Nom. to Verb. 動詞之主位	Obj. to Verb Direct 動詞之直接賓辭	Obj. in Apposition 同位之賓辭
" as Compl. to Verb. 動詞之完成辭之主位	" " Indirect 動詞之間接賓辭	" to Preposition 前置詞之賓辭
" in Apposition. 同位之主位	" Retained 動詞之保存賓辭	" Adverbial 副詞之賓辭
" of Address. 稱呼之主位	" " Cognate 動詞之同種賓辭	" after certain Adject. 或形容詞之後之賓辭
" Absolute 絕對主位	" " Reflexive 動詞之反身賓辭	" Interjectional 感嘆詞之賓辭
Possessive 領位	" as Compl. to Verb. 動詞之完成辭之賓辭	

IV. *Adjective.* 形容詞

The Kind of Adjective.	Degree. 程度	Use. 用法
Proper 固有 (Of Quality 性質 (Of Quantity 數量	Number 數 (Def. 有定 (Indef. 無定	Attributive 修飾的
Distributive. Demonstrative (Def. 分配 指示 (Indef.	Superlative. 最高級	Predicative 敘述的

V. *Adverbs.* 副詞

Kind.	Degree.	Use.	Attributive Use. 修飾的用法
Simple 單純	Positive	Attributive.	To qualify Verb 形容動詞 " " Adjectives
Relative 複據	Comparative	Predicative	" " Adverb
Interrogative 疑問	Superlative		" " Preposition
			" " Conjunction
			" " Sentence

VI. *Finite Verb.* 有定動詞

Kind of Verb.	Person.	Number.	Tense 時	Form 形
Transitive 他動詞	1st 2nd 3rd	Singular Plural	Present 現在	Indefinite 不定 Continuous 連續 Perfect 完全 Perf. Contin. 完全連續
Intransitive 自反動			Past 過去	
Auxiliary 助動詞			Future 未來	
Defective 不完全動詞				

Mood. 法	Voice. 語氣	
Indicative 直說法	Active 原動 Passive 被動	此動詞與其選出或省畧之主辭(一個或一個以上)為一致。 此動詞支配其選出或省畧之賓辭(一個或一個以上)。
Imperative 命令法		
Subjunctive 假設法		

VII. *Infinitive*. 無定法

Form.	(a) Use as Noun-Inf. 爲名詞無定法之用法	(b) Use as Gerundial Inf. 爲動名詞的無定法之用法
Indefinite	Subject to Verb 動詞之主辭	To qualify a Verb. 爲形容動詞
Continuous	Object to Verb 動詞之賓辭	" " a Noun { Attributively { Predicatively 爲形容名詞
Perfect	Complement to Verb 動詞之完成辭	" " Adjective 爲形容乎形容詞
Per. Contin.	Object to Preposition 前置詞之賓辭 Exclamatory 感嘆辭	To introduce a Parenthesis 爲導入夾句

VIII. *Participle or Verbal Adjective*.

分詞即動詞狀形容詞

Form.	Voice.	Kind of Verb.	Use.
Present	Active.	Transitive	Attributive 修飾的
Past			Predicative 敘述的
Perfect	Passive	Intransitive	Gerundive 動名詞的

IX. *Gerund*. 動名詞

Form.	Voice.	Kind of Verb.
Present	Active	Transitive
Perfect	Passive	Intransitive

X. *Conjunctions.* 接續詞

Co-ordinative 同位接續詞	Subordinative 從位接續詞
------------------------	------------------------

384. *Nominative Case.*—參照第三號解剖圖表。

(1) 爲動詞之主辭(參照 § 59):—

I did this, *Rain* is falling. *You* are tired.

註.—“I” 是動詞 “did” 之主辭, 主位也。

(2) 爲動詞之主觀的完成辭(參照 § 182):—

I am *the man*. *Cæsar* was declared *emperor*.

註.—“Ma.” 是動詞 “am” 之主觀的完成辭, 主位也。

備考.—無定法可以用於動詞與名詞之間:—

He appeared *to be* a wise man.

註.—無定法之 “to be” 是位於 “appeared” 之動詞, 與 “ma.” 之名詞 (主觀的完成辭) 之間, 蓋譯爲於動詞之主觀的完成辭也。

(3) 與主位之名詞或代名詞同位(參照 § 19):—

John, *his carpenter*, has succeeded well in business.

註.—名詞之 “Carpenter” 是與 “John” 之主位名詞同位, 主位也。

(4) 用爲稱呼之目的(參照 § 59):—

How art thou fallen, *O Cæsar!*

註.—“Cæsar” 是稱呼者, 然其仍爲此文之主辭, 主位也。

(5) 絕對之組織(參照 § 28 a):—

Off we started, *he remaining behind*.

(從觀的, 我等自啟)

註.—“he remaining behind” 是爲絕對之組織，其中之“he” 是主位。

備考.—不變此文之意義，亦可以用“while he remained behind” 一節以代“he remained behind” 一句之絕對組織法，其中之名詞或代名詞即是爲主位，因（觀上例而知）定動詞之主辭已含於分詞中也。

385. Possessive Case.—參照第三號之解剖圖表。

(a) 領位之名詞爲形容詞之作用而形容名詞及動名詞（參照 § 114. 4）：—

My son. The *barber's* shop. The *tiger's* claw:—名詞。

I was displeas'd at *his* going away without leave. } 名動

This was plan of *your* contriving. } 詞

(§ 250). (此是關於汝經營之方法)

(b) 兩領位名詞而互相同位或由“and” 所結合時，其領位符 (apostrophe) 之’s 不加附於第一之名詞（參照 § 145）：—

Herod married his *brother* Philip's wife.

Maple and company's firm.

(瑪甫爾會社)

註.—“brother” 與“Philip” 皆是同位，故不附’s 于“brother.”

(c) 領位名詞或代名詞，可以爲動詞之完成辭（關於代名詞參照 § 145）：—

That book is *mine*, not *yours*.

This shop seems to be a *barber's*.

註.—“Mine” 及“yours” 皆爲動詞“is” 之完成辭。“Barber's” 是爲動詞“seem” 之完成辭。

386. Objective Case.—參照第三號解剖圖。

(1) 爲動詞之賓辭 (§ 193 備考)：—

(a) The master teaches *Inchd.* (*Direct.*)

- (b) He teaches *his sons* Euclid. (*Indirect.*)
 (c) His sons were taught *Euclid*. (*Retained.*)
 (d) The fever will run its *Course*. (*Cognat.*)
 (e) He sat *himself* down. (*Reflexive.*)

(2) 爲動詞之客觀的完成辭 (§ 182) :—

The citizens made him their *king*.

(市民建彼爲彼等之王)

註.—“King” 是動詞之客觀的完成辭。

備考.—無定法可以置於動詞與名詞之間 :—

The people considered him *to be* a wise man.

(人民以彼爲賢人)

(3) 與賓位之名詞或代名詞同位 (§ 19) :—

The people of England beheaded Charles I., their *king*.

註.—“King” 是與賓辭之名詞 “Charles I.” 同位。

(4) 爲前置詞之賓辭 (§ 60) :—

He fought against *me*. (他對余而戰)

A house built on *sand*. (一屋建於沙上)

(5) 副詞的賓位，此種句恰如副詞之作用而形容他語，故以是名之 (§ 675) :—

He lived ten *years*. (示時間)

He walked ten *miles*. (示空間)

This coat ten *rupees*. (示價值)

That box weighs ten *seers*. (示重量)

The air is a *trifle* hotter to-day. (示程度)

Bind him *hand* and *foot*. (示附屬之事情)

註.—“ten years” 是恰如副詞而形容動詞之 “lived” 也。

(b) 形容詞 “like” 或 “unlike” 又 “near,” “next” 之次之賓位。(此是大抵由省畧之前置詞 “to” 而生者，故 “to” 雖今日尙有時用於此類形容詞之後)。

No man could bend the bow *like him*.

(無人能挽弓如彼所挽一樣)

The house *nearest the grove* in the one¹ that prefer.

(近於森林之屋是道於余所選擇也)

註.—“him” 及 “grove” 皆賓位。

(7) 感歎詞之次之賓位或感動句中之賓位。

Unhappy *me!* Oh unhappy *man!* Oh dear *me!*

Foolish *fellow!* to have wasted his time as he has done.²

(蠢漢，如此就虛度汝之光陰矣)

387. The two uses of Adjective 形容詞之二用法。—
參照第四號解剖圖。

(a) 修飾的用法 (§ 113) :—

An *industrious* student will generally succeed.

(勤力之學生將來有一般之成功)

(b) 敘述的用法 (§ 113) :—

He was *industrious*, and therefore he succeeded.

(他平素勤力故他能成功)

388. Noun or Gerund used as an Adjective 名詞或動名詞用爲形容詞。——名詞或動名詞可以用於修飾的以代形容詞，但不能代敘述辭耳。

1. The one = the house, 2. As he has done = as he has wasted.

- 名詞之例... { *A village watchman.* (村落更夫)
 { *A sea captain.* (船長)
 { *Marble hall.* (大理石之堂)
- 動名詞之例 { *Drinking water.* (飲用之水)
 { *A bathing place.* (浴場)

389. Adjective substituted for Adverb 形容詞代用副詞。——形容動詞之副詞，可以變其爲形容詞以形容動詞之主辭，但此際之形容詞已成爲“副詞的加添辭矣”(Adverbial Adjunct)，參照 § 306, c:—

He went away *sad*. The stars are shining *bright*.

(他去後而悲)

(星宿放燦爛之光)

And *furious* every charger neighed.—*Campbell*.

(成羣戰馬且嘶鳴)

Dark lowers the tempest overhead.—*Longfellow*.

(濤濤風雨暗蒙頭)

And *fearless* there the lowly sleep.—*Mrs. He vans*.

(更有下流者，晏然睡未醒)

They neither toil nor spin, but *careless* grow.

(彼等既不勤勞，復不紡績，但圖放蕩)

—*Thompson*

Slow rises worth by poverty depressed.—*Johnson*.

(真價值之人，乃由壓于困窮之漸進而上也)

備考 1. 一副詞爲形容動詞以外之副詞時，則此副詞不得代用形容詞。故云“*He is immensely clever,*”不能爲“*He is immensely clever*”之代用。

備考 2. 一在於韻文有形容詞爲形容動詞之主辭，副詞爲形容動詞之自己本身者，則形容詞與副詞時有由“and”結合而共用：—

When *faint* and *wearily* he drags.

Along his moontide way.—*Saunders*.

(神衰氣疲後，予于日中途)

Trip it *deft* and *merrily*.—*Scott*.

(舞蹈兮精而樂)

But Sir Richard bore in hand.

All the sick men from the land.

Very *carefully* and *slow*.—*Tennyson*.

(誰料李公情意切，輕伸柔臂拯傷人)

390. Pronoun and Antecedent 代名詞與先行辭，——

參照解剖圖第二號及第三號。

(a) 代名詞固要與其先行辭同位及同數，同性。但在於“位”之文体，則宜依定其本文之意。(此是文法上名之爲 Concord (一致)或 Agreement)。

After Caesar was declared *emperor* (主位), they slew *him** (賓位).

(既而該撒宣佈爲皇帝後；彼等(羅馬人民)就殺他)

You must return the *book* (賓位), *which* (主位) was lent. (汝所借之書須要送回)

(b) 複陳代名詞對於兩個異人稱之先行辭時，但可與其最近者爲一致：—

You are the man who *is* chosen.†

(汝是被選之人)

* Him (第三人稱單數陽性)之人稱，數，性，與其先行辭之 emperor (第三人稱單數陽性)爲一致，惟其位不同，此前者賓位，後者主位也。此 him 是依其自己之文意而定其位。

† Who 爲複陳代名詞，you 與 man 是其兩個同人稱之先行辭，此兩者惟 man (第三人稱單數)惟最近，故 who 即與其一致，who 爲單數之第三人稱，所以動詞之 is 亦依之。

試訂正下文中之謬誤：—

I am the man who seek to help thee in distress. Thou art the man who fleest away in the time of danger. Art thou the chief, who brokest the power of the enemy?

答案及其譯解

I am the man who *seeks* to help thee in distress.

(余是可求而幫助汝患難之人也)

Thou art the man who *flees* away in the time of danger.

(汝是在患難所逃去之人也)

Art thou the chief who *broke* the power of enemy.

(汝是被敵軍之勢力之人也)

391. The two uses of Adverbs 副詞之二用法。——

參照解剖圖第五號。

(a) 修飾的用法 (§ 270) 副詞而用於修飾的時，除名詞或代名詞外，無論如何詞類，皆可用此副詞以形容之：—

(1) 形容形容詞。—He is *remarkably clever*.

(他是非常聰穎)

(2) 形容動詞。—*Act decisively*, if you act at all.

(若汝行，則能然行之)

(3) 形容其他之副詞。—He explained his views *remarkably well*. (他解說其意見甚是清楚)

(4) 形容前置詞。—The sun stood *exactly* over our heads. (太陽正當吾等之頭上)

(5) 形容接續詞。—You may go *only if* you promise to return. (若爾肯回來汝便去)

(6) 形容一文.—*Fortunately*, all the thieves were caught. (幸矣哉一切之賊盡被捕)

(b) 敘述的用法 (§ 270), 在此用法, 其副詞是爲其先立動詞之完成辭(主觀的完成辭或客觀的完成辭).

(1) 主觀的完成辭.—The results will soon *be out* (=published). (其結果將發表)

(2) 客觀的完成辭.—We found him quite *well* (=in perfect health). (我們知得他十分康健)

392. **Verb and Subject 動詞與主辭**——參照關於數及人稱之 四號解剖圖.

有定動詞之數及人稱, 須與其主辭同 (§ 199). (是亦名爲 Concord 或 Agreement).

試將左文改其動詞與其主辭爲一致:—

- (1) When you was here last, you was very fond of reading.
 (2) The pleasures of life vanishes, when we becomes old and infirm. (3) Thou would have seen the horse, if it had come towards us. (4) School is broken up and the boys is playing at cricket. (5) The Taj Mahal at Agra have stood a great many years. (6) You is not the man that I want. (7) I am still fond of books as when you was here before. (8) The movement of most quadrupeds are very swift. (9) You will be rewarded with a prize for your industry. (10) The following plans has been settled. (11) The origin of Hindu manners and customs are unknown.

答案及其譯解

1. When you *were* here last, you *were* fond of reading.
(汝前居於此處，汝是好讀書)
2. The pleasures of life *wanish*, when we *become* old and infirm.
(吾人年老至衰弱時，則消失生活之興味)
3. Thou *wouldst* have seen the horse, if it had come towards us.
(若馬向我等而來，則已見之)
School is broken up and the boys *are* playing at cricket.
(學校放假之時，童子等以打球為遊戲)
5. The Taj Mahal at Agra² *has* stood a great many years.
(泰哈馬賀在亞加特建立很多年)
6. You *are* not the man that I want.
(汝非余所要之人)
7. I am still as fond of books as when you *were* here before.
(余尚如汝在此所時而好書詩)
8. The movement of most quadruped *is* very swift.
(大抵四足獸之動作極為迅速)
9. You *will* be rewarded with a prize for your industry.
(汝將受賞品以嘉獎汝之精勤)
10. The following plans *have* been settled.
(次之計畫已定)
11. The origin of Hindu manners and customs *is* unknown.
(印度人之風俗習慣之起源是無能知者)

393. The Third Person of Verbs 動詞之第三人稱：
——文章上所用之動詞，除其主辭為第一人稱或第二人稱之人稱代名詞外，若其主辭屬於第一人或第二人稱則亦須用第一二人稱之動詞，大抵用第三人稱之動詞居多：—

* Agra 地名，The Taj Mahal 在印度，臺之建築物名。

- (1) 名詞(第三人稱之主辭).—*a snake is crawling through the grass.*
(一蛇爬行過草中)
- (2) 代名詞(„).—*He returned to us tomorrow.*
(他明日復回來我們處)
- (3) 無定法(„).—*To err is human.*
(過失是人事)
- (4) 動名詞(„).—*Sleeping gives rest to the body.*
(睡是休養人之身體)
- (5) 句 („).—*How to do this was unknown to every one.*
(如何爲此是各人不知)
- (6) 節 („).—*That we must all die is certain.*
(吾人總要死是確定事)

394. Subject not the same Person 主辭之不同人稱

(a) 兩個或兩個以上不同人稱之主辭，若由 “and” 連結之。其主辭之屬於第一人稱者，採用第二人稱動詞更勝於用第一人稱，其主辭之屬於第二人稱者，採用第三人稱動詞更勝於用第二人稱。且其第一人稱之主辭，又宜記載於最後：—

James and I *are* (=we are) great friend.

(蓋來司與余皆爲大親密朋友也)

註.—“are” 是屬於第二人稱之動詞也，今則與 “I” 連用。“I” 爲第一人稱之主辭，今則置於最後 (a) 節所云，蓋此之謂也

(b) 但兩個或兩個以上之主辭而由 “or” 或 “nor” 所連結時，苟欲使其動詞符合其人稱者，則僅可與其最近之主辭爲一致：—

Either James or I *am* at the top of the class.

(若非惹米司則是余在此班之首位)

Either you or James *has* done it.

(若非汝則是惹米司已做成之)

Neither James nor you *were* present.

(既非惹米司復非汝在)

註：—第一例之 “am” 是與 “I” 爲一致，第二例之 “has” 是與 “James” 爲一致，第三例之 “were” 是與 “you” 爲一致，三皆皆與最近之主辭爲一致也。

前例雖爲彼，然能使其動詞反覆與其主辭相照應者，則更佳，茲改寫其文如下：—

Either James *is* at the top of the class or I *am*.*

Either you *have* done it or James *has*.*

Neither James *was* present nor *were* you.*

(c) 兩個主辭由 “as well as” 結合時，其動詞之數及人稱宜與第一個爲一致：—

My comrades as well as I myself *were* caught.

(余之同伴與余自己同爲被捕)

此可以知動詞與第一主辭爲一致之規則之理由。蓋 “my comrades were caught” 是爲主節，其由 “as well as” 導入之他節是爲從位節。

* I am 與 I am at the top of the class 之意。

James has : James has done.

You were : you were present.

395. Two Singular Nouns with Plural Verb 有複數動詞之兩單數名詞——兩個或兩個以上之名詞，由“and”而連結之者，須用一複數動詞以應之。

A man and his wife *have* come here asking for work.

(一人與其妻來此問傭工)

Your horse and mine (=my horse) *are* both at the door.

(君之馬與余之馬兩皆在門)

依此規則而有兩例外：—

(a) 若兩名詞由“and”連結而關說為同一之人物，則所用之動詞是單數而非複數；如：—

The great scholar and poet *is* dead.

(大儒兼詩伯是已死)

此“scholar”與“poet”是關說同樣之人，而其文可以詳寫之如下：—

The man who was a great scholar and a great poet, *is* dead.

備考。一時而冠詞是記載一次，如“the great scholar and poet,” 是此冠詞為統御兩名詞矣。此即表明其兩名詞原是一人而非兩人之意味，故此動詞須單數。

但冠詞為記載兩次；如“the scholar and the poet,” 於是此：詞含有兩種人之意味矣，故所接之動詞須為複數；如：—

The scholar and the poet *are* dead.

(b) 若兩名詞由“and”所連結，其所着眼似在於單獨之物体或意思者，則其動詞宜用單數；如：—

Truth and honesty *is* the best policy.

(真實與忠厚，是為最良之處世方)

Curry and rice *was* his favourite food.

(黃蓋與飯，是他寵愛之食品)

Slow and steady *wins* the race.

(徐徐而不懈怠勝競走)

此例“truth and honesty”即爲其真實與忠厚之行爲耳。故所續之動詞宜用單數，同樣之“curry and rice”此爲黃蓋與所成之飯混合物，“slow and steady”即徐徐與不懈之計策，皆着眼在一事物也。

396. One Singular Noun with Plural Verb 有複數動詞之一單數名詞。——群集名詞(由集合名詞所區別者，參照 § 39) 其所續之動詞宜用複數：—

The jury (各個陪審人，或陪審官之各人) *were* divided in their opinions, and could not agree as to the verdict. (陪審官各異其意見，不能爲一致之裁判)

The jury (此爲一團體) selected *its* speaker. (陪審官選舉其議長)

註。——第一例之“jury”是示各個陪審官，此爲群集名詞而非集合名詞，故其所續之動詞用複數，第二例之“jury”是示陪審官之全體，此爲群集名詞而非集合名詞，故其所續之動詞用單數，下文倣此。

The multitude (各個之男子及婦人) *rise* from their seats and shout applause. (此群之人各由其座立起而大叫贊成)

This multitude (一團體) *is* too large to be contained in so small a building. (此群人共入于此室是太也于多)

397. The Simple or Noun-Infinitive 單純無定法即名詞無定法。——參照解剖圖第七號。

單純或名詞無定法可爲 (a) 動詞之主辭，(b) 動詞之賓辭，(c) 動詞之完或辭，(d) 前置詞之賓辭，(此是雖爲不甚

普通), (e) 感嘆詞一種之形(參照 § 235):—

- (a) 動詞之主辭.—*To sleep is necessary to health.*
(睡為衛生所必要)
- (b) 動詞之賓辭.—*We desire to improve.*
(我們願有進步)
- (c) 動詞之完成辭.—*He appear to be clever.*
(他似乎聰明)
- (d) 前置詞之賓辭.—*Your cow is about (=near) to die*
(=death). (汝之牛母將近死)
- (e) 感嘆詞之形.—*To think that he should have de-*
ceived me! (以為他騙我矣)

398. The Gerundial or Qualifying Infinitive 動名詞狀或形容詞無定法。——參照第七號解剖圖。

動名詞狀或形容詞無定法, 其用法如次。——(a) 形容乎動詞之在其位為副詞之作用者, (b) 形容乎名詞之在其位為形容詞之作用者, (c) 形容乎形容詞之在為副詞之作用者, (d) 插入夾句之在其位為絕對之用法(參照 § 236):—

- (a) 形容動詞.—*They went out to see the sport.*
(彼等出去看遊戲)
- (b) 形容名詞. { *A house to let.* (修飾的)
(出租屋)
This house is to let. (敘述的)
(此屋出租也)
- (c) 形容形容詞.—*Be quick to hear and slow to speak.*
(敏于聽而精于言)
- (d) 插入夾句.—*He is — to speak plainly, — a thief.*
(明白而論, 他是一盜賊也)

備考. 一當形容名詞時, 有時可用無定法于被動語氣, 但於何地位而最適用原動語氣, 與何地位而最適用被動語氣, 此是不能立一定之規則.

399. The three uses of Participle 分詞之三用法. 一參照第八號解剖圖.

(a) 修飾的用法, (參照 § 113 在于形容詞之修飾的用法):—

A *willing* horse. A *fallen* tree. A *withered* flower.

(一竭力馬)

(一倒樹)

(一殘花)

(b) 敘述的用法.——用分詞為敘述的大抵有二法 (1) 分詞為動詞之完成辭時 (再參 § 13), 或 (2) 分詞與其先立之名詞同用於絕蓋的時 (參照 §§ 284, 5):—

(1) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{We found him } *sleeping*. \text{ (主觀的完成辭)} \\ \text{(我們發見他睡)} \\ \text{We became } *alarmed*. \text{ (客觀的完成辭)} \\ \text{(他變爲恐慌)} \end{array} \right.$

(2) Our pace was slow, the horse *being tired*.

馬是疲瘦, 故我們之步是以延緩

備考 1.—於絕對組織, 其分詞之用作敘述辭時, 若可改書其絕對句為從位節之形而無碍者, 即可因之而明其以有定動詞即敘述辭而代用分詞之理:—

\int Our pace was slow, the horse *being tired*.

\lfloor Our pace was slow, *because* the horse *was tired*.

備考 2.—在分詞之敘述的用法之 (2) 例, 若無名詞或代名詞述出時, 此分詞是謂之非人稱絕對的 Impersonal Absolute (參照 § 28 a 及 § 274, 4).

Supposing this to be true, you are certainly guilty.

(此是果真, 則汝確爲有罪)

(c) 動名詞的用法 (§ 251). 在此用法, 分詞爲示可成之事, 且含蓄有動名詞狀名詞之意:—

{ This prevented the letter *being sent*; =
 { This prevented *the sending of* the letter.

(此是防碍寄信)

Parsed Sentence. 文之解剖

Brahmadatta, king of Benares, took a journey through the length and breadth of his kingdom to see if his subjects were happy.

(波羅奈斯之王拔拉打打, 巡行其全國, 以考察其臣民之幸福及繁盛之事)

Brahmadatta.—Proper Noun, masculine gender, singular number, nominative case, 動詞 “took” 之主辭.

King.—Common Noun, masculine gender, singular number, nominative case, 與 “Brahmadatta” 同位.

Of.—Preposition, 引 “Benares” 爲其賓辭.

Benares.—Proper Noun, neuter gender, singular number, 前置詞 “of” 之後之賓位.

Took.—Verb transitive, third person, singular number, past indefinite tense, indicative mood, active voice, 與其主辭之 “Brahmadatta” 爲一致, 且引 “journey” 爲其賓辭.

Journey.—Common Noun, neuter gender, singular number, 動詞 “took” 之後之賓辭.

Through.—Preposition, 引 “length” 與 “breadth” 爲其賓辭.

Length.—Abstract Noun, neuter gender, singular number, 前置詞 “through” 之賓位.

And.—Co-ordinative Conjunction, 連結 “length” 與 “breadth” 之兩名詞.

Breadth.—Abstract Noun, neuter gender, singular number, 前置詞 “through” 之賓位.

Of.—Preposition, 引 “kingdom” 爲其賓辭.

His.—Personal (或 demonstrative) pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, possessive case, third person, 與其先行辭 “Brahmadatta” 之性、數、及人稱爲一致形容名詞之 “kingdom.”

Kingdom.—Common Noun, singular number, neuter gender, 前置詞 “of” 之後之賓位。

To see.—Verb-transitive, infinitive mood, present indefinite form, gerundial use, 形容動詞之 took, 引 “if.....prosperous” 爲其賓辭, 故他動詞也。

If.—Subordinative Conjunction.

His.—(辭同上)

Subjects.—Common Noun, common gender, plural number, nominative case, 動詞 “were” 之主辭。

Were.—Verb intransitive, third person, plural number, past indefinite tense, indicative mood, 與主辭之 “subject” 爲一致。

Hopely.—Adjective of quality, positive degree, predicative in use, 動詞之 “were” 主辭完成辭。

§ 2 章二. POSITION OF WORDS.

言辭之位置

Adjective of Noun 形容詞與名詞

400. 形容詞而關於其所形容其名詞之位置者, 通常是依其用於修飾的或敘述的而定之 (參照 § 113).

Adjective used Attributively 用於修飾的之形容詞

401. 形容詞用于修飾的時, 其與被其形容之名詞之相去距離, 可以近而使之愈近者, 此是爲一定之規則也。

402. 形容詞之用於散文者, 幾常位于其形容之名詞之前。用於韻文者, 固有求音律之便時亦或有置於其所形容之名詞之次:—

Prose 散文

A just man. (正人) *Bright* prospects. 光輝之希望
This rose. *Other* rose, *Much* pain. *Ten* men.
The fifth class. (第五級) *Double* promotion. (二重之昇進)

Poetry 韻文

He sang lords and ladies *gay*.
 The unpremeditated lay.—*Scott*.
 (彼人對於華麗之紳士及貴女，歌無意之歌)
 The old man *eloquent*.—*Byron*.
 (雄辯老人)

403. 或用形容句而擴充其形容詞時，此形容詞必一定常置於其所形容之名詞之後

As man *dear* to all. (對於凡人而親愛之人)

註.—“to all”之形容句，是擴充“dear”之形容詞。

A matter too *urgent* to be put off any longer.

(一甚緊急而難稍寬之事件)

註.—“to be put off any longer”之形容句，是亦擴充“urgent”之形容詞。

A doctor well *practised* in all the arts of medicine and *worthy* of public confidence.

(通達醫學而博世人之信用之醫士)

註.—“in all the arts of medicine”之形容句，是擴充“practised”之形容詞。
 “of public confidence”之形容句，是擴充之“worthy”之形容詞。

Bread *enough* and to spare.

(除應用外尚有餘剩之麵包)

註.—“to spare”之形容句，是擴充“enough”之形容詞。故若詳對此全文，則為“Bread enough and enough to spare.”

備考。一如以上諸例，若依 § 401 所舉之定則，是不可不置形容詞於其所形容之名詞之次。蓋不如是，則如云 “a dear to all man” 時，其 ‘to all’ 是與形容詞所形容之名詞相分離矣。

404. 時而數個形容詞同時而形容同一形之名詞者，此形容詞置於其名詞之先或後皆無不可。

A horse strong, swift, and young 或 a strong swift and young horse. (強且速敏捷之馬)

備考 1. 一數個形容詞中，其有比于別個而字數稍多者，若置少字數者在先，則句調較佳。

An *old*, and *conscientious* servant.
(老練有真心之僕)

The *shorter* and *less laborious* of the two methods.
(二方法中之簡且勞少方法)

備考 2. 一形容詞若由長語而成立者，若置之於名詞之次，則句調較佳。

God is the maker of all things *visible* and *invisible*, *animate* and *inanimate*.

(神是有形無形有生無生之一切事物之造主也)

405. 時有用形容詞為示文之要點即強語勢時，其形容詞亦置於其名詞之後。

謂形容詞置於其名詞之後而為示文之要點者，是別有故。蓋形容詞當然之位置，宜立於名詞之前。今變其位置而置在後，則比于在當然位置時，其引起讀者之注意為更大矣。

Things *temporal* are less precious than things *eternal*,
(限于現世之事物，不若永久不壞之事物之可貴)

No man *living* could have done so well.
(現在之人，無有能為斯善民)

I appeal from Philip *drunk* to Philip *sobber*.

(余由大醉之非醉，而控告于不醉之非醉)

The body *natural* and the body *politie*.

(自然体與政治体)

406. 又如前節所述爲強語勢或區別事物，而用形容詞以形容稱號時，其形容詞亦可以置於名詞之後。

Alfred the *Great*. (阿非列大王) Alexander the *Great*. (亞力山大

大王) Yudisthir the *Just*. (天弟士利亞正王) Etherred

the *unready*. (伊弟辣亞銳王) Albert the *Good*. (柯亞善王)

Louis the *Pious*. (路易毅神王) Charles the *Fat*. (查理市

肥王) Philip the *Fair*. (菲贊奧王) Richard the *Lion-*

hearted. (李力察孫王) Charles the *Bold*. (查理市勇國王)

“Elder”及“younger”稱號位置，亦須同此原則：—

Cato the *Elder*. (兄迦多) Cato the *younger*. (弟迦多)

Pliny the *Elder*. (兄普靈) Pliny the *younger*. (弟普靈)

同名稱國王之名，欲區別之爲第一世，第二世，第三世等，而指明其歷代之次序者，此等次序之稱號，可用羅馬數目 I, II, III. 字以示之，且宜置之於名詞之最後。

Edward II. (= Edward the First). (約瑟第一世)

Edward II. (= Edward the Second). (約瑟第二世)

407. 於此有慣用之句，其形容詞每置於其名詞之後者，此是大都由法蘭西國語或其慣用語傳來者，但其有時亦爲強語意或對句之作用。

The body politic (政治体即國家或社會)。(此是與舊用之

“*the body natural*”一句對照，即個人之体成於自然，集

合之体即政治体成於社會之謂)

Malice prepense (故意之惡意，預計蓄之惡目的也)。

Heir apparent (世子或繼子), 依生來之特權, 而均可相續
現在之王位或領土之人,

Lords Temporal and Spiritual (社會貴族及宗教貴族). 此
是區別現世的即社會的階級之貴族, 與精神的即宗教的
階級之貴族之兩者.

Notary public (公證人). 記錄證書, 遺言書, 及其他法定證
書之人.

Knight errant (巡行武士). 巡行處處搜索邪事而矯正之以
為已事務之武士.

Governor General (總督). *Inspector General* (總監).
Viceroy elect (選任之總督). *Bishop elect* (選任之監
督). (此 *elect* 之形容詞, 是表已被指定職位, 而尙未行
任命式之官吏).

The sum *total* (總計). *Price current* (時價). A fiend
incarnate (肉身之鬼). A God *incarnate* (肉身之神)
Point blank (空點即射擊標中心之白點或空點). *Letter
patent* (特許狀). *Lord paramount* (封建之王).
Things temporal (現世之事物). *Things eternal* (永久
不滅之事物).

Adjectives used Predicatively.

用於敘述的之形容詞

408. 形容詞用於敘述的時, 宜置之於其名詞之次:—

(a) 動詞為自動詞或被動語氣者:—

All men are *mortal*. He lay *dead* on the ground.

(凡人皆歸於死)

(彼橫死於地上)

- He become *very rich*. He was left *rich* by his father.
 (他成爲甚富) (他是由其父遺落之財產而致富)
- He was considered wise.
 (彼人已被重視如賢者)

以上皆主觀完成辭

(b) 動詞爲他動詞而用於原動語氣者：一

- My father left me *poor*, but *well educated*.
 (余父無財產遺下，惟留余以完全之教育耳)
- The judge declared him *guilty*.
 (裁判官已宣告彼爲有罪)

以上皆客觀完成辭

409. 但因欲強其語勢時，則宜置敘述的形容詞（或謂分詞）於其名詞之前，如是引起讀者之注意爲更大：一

- Great is Diana of the Ephesians.
 大哉伊非蘇亞人之達那；Diana 是 Ephesos 之聖宇，世界七大奇之一。
- Disgraced* you are, and will remain.
 (汝已自辱，則儼然之來，將未有已矣)
- Sweet* are the uses of adversity.
 (利用艱苦者，愉快也)

Adverbs. 副詞

410. 副詞所形容之辭，若爲形容詞，或副詞，或前置詞，或接續詞時，則形容用之副詞，可直置於其所形容之辭之前。

- 形容形容詞或分詞 { We are *half* pleased and *half* sorry.
(我半喜半怒)
- 形容形容詞或分詞 { The mango you brought was *quite* ripe.
(汝所携來之芒果是十分熟)
- 形容形容詞或分詞 { Your pay is *too* high for your work.
(汝之給料, 太高於汝之工率)
- 形容副詞 { a snake creeps *very* silently.
(蛇匍匐行甚靜)
- 形容副詞 { He stood *far* apart from me.
(彼人所立與余相離遠)
- 形容副詞 { He seized my hand *rather* eagerly.
(彼人却熱心握余之手)
- 形容前置詞 { He arrived *long* before the time.
(他到早已久矣)
- 形容前置詞 { We sat *almost* in the shade.
(我殆坐於樹蔭)
- 形容前置詞 { He stood *exactly* behind me.
(他正立於余後)
- 形容接續詞 { Tell me *precisely* how it happened.
(彼事如何而起, 請告余以詳細也)
- 形容接續詞 { I like a mango *only* when it is ripe.
(余惟喜熟芒果)
- 形容接續詞 { He did this *merely* because he was ordered.
(他單是爲此而已, 因其僅是吩咐此也)

備考. 一對於上揭之範圍而言有一例外即于其名詞之後而置以 “enough” 是也. 但此 “enough” 必用爲形容詞時乃得, 若爲副詞則否.

Your pay is good *enough* for your work.

(汝之給料適相當汝之工率)

He spoke highly *enough* of what you had done.

(彼關於汝所成就之事十分讚賞)

411. 副詞所形容之動詞若是自動詞時，則副詞可以直置于其所形容之動詞之後。

He lived *well* and died *happily*.

(他生榮死安)

He laughed *heartily* at that *joke*.

(他心笑彼滑稽之事)

He spoke *foolishly* about his own merits.

(他愚謬自己之功績)

備考。一對於此規則有七例外：一

always, never, often, sometime, generally, rarely, 及 seldom 之七個副詞，是置之於其所形容之動詞之前，而非置之於其後。

He *always* laughed at a good joke.

(他常笑好滑稽)

He *never* spoke about his own merits.

(他絕不講其功績)

He *often* came here to see me.

(他常來此訪余)

He *sometime* slept my house.

(他有時睡於吾家)

He *seldom* stayed with me for long.

(他罕與余久住)

但動詞之如 “to be” 者，無論前與後，皆可用此等副詞置入之：一

He is *seldom* absent. He *seldom* is absent.

(他罕有不在)

(同上)

412. 若副詞所形容之動詞爲他動詞時，則形容用之副詞，決不可置之於動詞與其賓辭之間，至使兩者生離隔之弊。

是以此副詞除不可置於動詞與其賓辭之間外，雖置之於動詞之前或賓辭之後皆可，但比較以置於賓辭之後爲普通：—

He bore his losses *cheerfully*.

(他欣然容忍其損失)

He did his work *patiently* till sunset.

(他忍耐爲其工事以至於日落)

He *briefly* explained his meaning.

(他略說明意見)

然設有時賓辭由多數之辭而成或被形容於一節者，其副詞亦可以置於動詞與其賓辭之間。

He rewarded *liberally* all those who had served him well.

(彼對於善遇自己之人皆厚報之)

但如 “He liberally rewarded.....” (即置副詞于動詞之前) 不甚慣用。

413. 動詞之時，若成形於助動詞者，則副詞大都置於助動詞與主動詞之間：—

The wind has *suddenly* risen. (驟然起風)

Your son will *soon* return. (汝之子將早回)

I have *quite* understood you. (余十分理解汝之意)

He is *almost* dying, I fear. (余恐其將死)

又否定副詞之 “*not*,” 亦常置於助動詞與主動詞之間：—

We have *not* seen him since Monday last.

(我等於前之禮拜一以來已不見他)

I did *not* know how ill he was.

(余不知其病狀如何)

We shall *not* punish him severely.

(我等將不嚴罰彼人)

試改正下文各副詞之位置：一

(1) He *exactly* stood in front of me. (2) He explained *clearly* his words. (3) I have read *often* that book. (4) He struck *severely* the ox with his whip. (5) He *soon* will return home. (6) He *almost* has finished his task. (7) The rain began to fall *suddenly*. (8) Your teacher is *enough* pleased with your industry. (9) He went out *seldom* before sunset.

答 案 及 譯 解

1. He stood *exactly* in front of me (依 § 411).

(他正立于余之前)

3. He explained his words *clearly* (依 § 412).

或 *clearly* explained his words (但前者較佳)

(他詳解其說)

3. I have *often* read that book (依 § 413).

(余屢屢讀其書)

4. He *severely* struck the ox with his whip (依 § 412).

(他以其鞭嚴擊牡牛)

5. He will *soon* return home (依 § 413).

(他將早回家)

6. He has *almost* finished his task (依 § 413).

(他將完其工本)

7. The rain *suddenly* began to fall. (依 § 412).

(雨俄然而降)

8. Your teacher is pleased *enough* with your industry (依 § 410 之假設).

(汝之教師十分喜汝之勤勉)

9. He *seldom* went out before sunset (依 § 411 之備考)
(他罕出行於日落以前)

414. 副詞置於文之首端時，則有左舉之兩用意：—

- a) 用副詞形容全文時：—

Luckily no one was inside, when the roof fell in.

(還算幸，屋蓋倒塌時無一人在屋內)

- (b) 副詞用為最強語意時：—

Down went the Royal George with all her crew complete.

—*Cowper*.

(Royal George 船與其同乘之水夫一並沈沒)

下舉兩文之意，是全依副詞之位置而定：—

- (1) *Happily* he did not die.

(還算幸，他不死)

- (2) He did not die *happily*.

(他不死於幸福)

上文 (1) 例之副詞，是形容其全文，蓋以其置在前也。(2) 例之副詞是形容自動詞之“die,” 蓋以其直置在自動詞之後也。(參照 § 411). 故 (1) 例之意為 “It was a happy result that he did not die.” (2) 例之意為 “He did not die a happy death.”

415. *Only*.—凡用此字之文，是全依此字之位置而定其意義：—

- (a) *Only* he promised to read the first Chapter of that book.

此“only”是形容詞而非副詞，即形容代名詞之“he”也。故其全文之意，可詳寫之如左：—

He alone, and no one else, promised to read the first Chapter of that book.

〔惟彼允讀其書之第一章，別人不允：〕

(b) He *only* promised to read the first Chapter of that book.

此“only”是副詞而形容動詞之“promised,”其全文之意爲「他僅允讀其書之第一章耳，仍未實行其言也」之意。

(c) He promised *only* to read the first Chapter of that book.

此“only”是一副詞而形容動詞之“read,”故其全文之意爲「彼僅允讀其書之第一章耳，至于研究之，分解之，暗誦之，皆不允也」之意。

(d) He promised to read *only* the first Chapter of that book.

此“only”是一副詞而形容形容詞之“the first.”故其全文之意爲「彼僅允讀其書之第一章耳，至于第一章以外則不允也」之意。

(e) He promised to read the first Chapter of that book *only* (或 *only* of that book).

此“only”是一副詞而形容“of that book”一句，故其全文之意爲「彼僅允讀其書之第一章，其書以外之第一章則不允讀」之意。

Subject and Object.

主辭及賓辭

416. 通常英文之散文，其主辭是立於其動詞之先者，此是爲原則也。但尙有多數之例外，學若不可不注意，茲舉之如左：—

(a) 動詞爲自動詞時，其動詞是爲引導副詞之“there”所先(參照 § 29)：—

On the whole* *there* is nothing to prove his guilty.

(要之他無證其罪之證據)

There came a messenger from the king's court.

(由內衙來一使者)

註：此“there”是全無意義，不過導入其動詞耳。與「彼處」之“there”不同。

(b) 用動詞爲疑問者：—

At what hour in the morning dose *he* get up?

(他是於朝早何時起來乎)

How came *you* to catch such a bad cold?

(汝如何感冒此邪風乎)

What are *you* carrying in that bag?

(汝所携之袋是何物在內乎)

(c) 用動詞爲命令法者：—

Go *ye* into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature.—*New Testament*.

(汝可往去全世界上，對各動物而說福音)

Thither our path lies: wind *we* up the height.

—*Browning*.

(彼處有我等之遺在，能委委曲曲引吾人以造其極也)

備考：一但動詞用于第二人稱時，通常將主辭提出，且命令法甚罕用于第一人稱及第三人稱。參照 § 220。

(d) 用動詞於前提法而表願望者，或以助動詞之“may”而表願望者(參照 § 230, 3)：—

* on the whole 要之之意。

Long live *the king*. (願王萬歲)

May *he* never again come inside the house.

(望彼莫再進來此屋)

(e) 用動詞爲前提法以表假定之意，但省略其 *if* 者(參照 § 230, 3)：—

Should *he* meet me, he would know me at once.

(= *If* he should meet me he.....).

(若彼遇我，他就直識我)

Had *he* met me, he would have known me

(= *If* he had met he.....).

(若他已遇過我，他就識我矣)

Were *I* certain of his motive, I could trust him

(= *If* I were certain of his motives I.....).

(余若確知其人之本心，余就信賴他)

(f) 用動詞爲記入直接話之言辭，且置之于所記入之言辭之中間者(參照 § 428)：—

“Agreed,” said *the prince*, “we will go there to-night.”

(王子曰，知識，我等今夜將到其處)

“Let me not live: quoth *he*.”

(彼曰，勿使吾生)

註.—“Agreed we will go there to-night” 是爲直接說話 *direct narration* 之言辭。“said” 是夾于其間而爲記入之動詞也。

(g) 用敘述的形容詞或分詞，而置於文之首端以作強語強用者(參照 § 182 之備考 2 及 § 409)：—

Great was *the delight* of the citizens.

(大矣哉市民之歡喜)

Blessed are the *merciful* for they shall obtain merciful.

(慈悲深之人，是享天福 因人將受慈悲于彼故也)

(k) 用副詞置於文之首端，以作強語勢用者(參照 §414):—

Up rose *the men* at the word of command.

(命令之語下，則人人起立)

There goes *the thief* catch him if you can.

(盜賊將去，汝之力若能及則請捕之)

(z) 常有用一對相關辭 (a pair of correlative words) 以結合兩單文時，而置兩節中之一節之主辭於其動詞或助動詞後者:—

As men sow, so will *they* also reap.

(人既播種，自應有收穫)

The more I saw of him, the less did *I* like him.

(余見彼愈多，余益不喜歡彼)

So rotten was *the boat*, that it very soon sank.

(小艇壞如此朽腐，故早速沈沒)

No sooner did *he* begin to speak, than every one was silent. (彼人僅始發言，而人人已沈靜矣)

Scarcely had we reached home before it began raining.

(我等僅到家而雨就始降)

(j) 置賓辭於其動詞之前時，不可置主辭於其動詞之後:—

Silver and gold have *I* none. (金與銀是余所無)

417. 動詞之賓辭除複體代名詞，或疑問代名詞，又或所置於文之首端之賓辭而非作強語勢用之外，其動詞之賓辭，可直置之於動詞之次(參照 § 176).

The house *that* we occupy suits us well. (複體代名詞爲賓辭) (我等所住之屋，是適合于我等)

What kind of book do you like best. (疑問代名詞爲賓

辭) (如何種類之書是汝所最好乎)

Silver and gold have none. (置賓辭於文首以作強語勢用)

418. 照通則而論，言辭之可以置於動詞與具賓辭之間者，除 (1) 形容詞或分詞，(2) 領位名詞或代名詞，(3) 用名詞或動名詞如形容詞之三款以外，凡一切他辭皆不能有此作用。

例如言 “I have finished *thoroughly* this work,” 是背英語之慣用語法矣。故此文應改言如左：“I have thoroughly finished this work” 或 “I have finished this work *thoroughly*.”

但如下揭之數例文是爲正體：一

I have selected *the best* book. (形容詞)

(余已選定最良之書)

I found my *friend's* house. (領位名詞)

(余已尋得吾友之屋)

Call for the *village* watchman, (名詞用如形容詞)

(呼村落更夫)

Relative and Antecedent.

複牒辭與先行辭

419. 複牒代名詞或複牒副詞之與其先行辭相去之距離，可以近則宜使之愈近，切莫令其互相隔越。

I have read a translation of Plato's writings who succeeded Socrates.

(余讀德拉著述之譯本，彼則繼於梭拉之後人也)

此文若改寫爲 “I have read the writings of Plato who succeeded Socrates” 則更佳。蓋變爲此體，則複體代名詞與其先行辭，庶不被 “writing” 而分離之也。

Preposition and Object.

前置詞及賓言

429. 在散文中(韻文不必然)，前置詞是直置於其賓辭之前。但仍有多數之例外，學者須要注意。茲揭之如左：—

(a) 前置詞之賓辭若爲 “whom,” “which” 或 “what” 則前置詞之在文之首或文之終皆可：—

That is the man *whom* we were looking for. (複體代名詞)
(彼是我等所尋之人)

Which of these chairs did you sit on? (疑問代名詞)

(此等椅汝坐何張乎)

(g) 前置詞之賓辭若爲複體代名詞之 “that,” 則前置詞不易置於文之終：—

This is the man *that* we were looking for.

(c) 前置詞之賓辭若爲省略之複體代名詞，則前置詞亦不易置在文之終：—

This is the man (畧 whom) we were looking for.

(d) 領位之名詞或代名詞或其他形容用之辭，皆可置於前置詞與其賓辭之間：—

He came to the *barber's* shop.

(他來理髮店)

(e) 在韻文中，其前置詞有時置於其名詞之後：—

They dashed that rapid torrent *through*.

(彼等突通過其急流)

註.—“torrent” 是前置詞之 “thorough” 所支配之名詞，即 “through” 之賓辭。

Chapter XIV. 第十四編

SEQUENCE OF TENSE. 時之次序

DIRECT AND INDIRECT NARRATION.

直接說話法及間接說話法

§ I 章一. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

時之次序

421. 凡兩段文由從位接續詞，或複聯(或疑問)代名詞，或副詞而合成者，一則謂之主文 Principle Sentence，其他謂之屬文 Dependent Sentence.

Principle. 主文

Dependent. 屬文

I will let *you* know

when I shall start.

(余於何時出發，余將俾汝知)

422. 關於時之次序，有二大規則，凡此以外之特別規則，皆就屬於此二大規則中。

第一則。——凡於主文有過去時之時，則必於屬文而續之以過去時：—

*Principle Sentence.**Dependent Sentence.**(Past Tense.)**(Past Tense.)*

It was settled,

that I *should* do this.

(余已定了將爲此事矣)

He *would* come,if you *wished* it.

(若汝望之, 則彼就來)

He *was* honest,although he *was* poor.

(彼雖是貧, 然正直也)

He *asked* me,whether I *had seen* his dog.

(他問余曾見彼之犬與否)

He *was* informed,that I *had been helping* him.

(彼已報告余助彼之事)

We never *understood*,how or why he *did* that.

(余總不解其爲彼事之如何方法, 或如何理由)

He *did* not leave off,till he *succeeded*.

(他至於成功時而仍未休)

I *was inquiring*,what you *had heard*.

(余是問汝之所聞)

He *succeeded*,because he *worked* hard.

(他勤工故能成事)

He *remained* silent,as soon as he *heard* that.

(他一聞彼言, 就沈默而不復言)

I *would* do this,if I *were* allowed.

(余若允爲此, 余就爲之)

He *walked* so farthat he *tired* himself.

(他行過遠路, 故他已倦)

第二則。——若於主文而有現在時或將來時之時, 則無論如

知之時之屬文，皆可以續之。

第二則之例

現在時或未來時	{ that he reads a book. (余知彼讀一書) that he is reading. that he has read. that he has been reading. that he will read. that he will be reading. that he will have read. that he will have been reading. ^t hat he read. that he was reading. that he had read. that he had been reading.	種種之時	
			} 現在時之四形
I know*		} 未來時之四形	
或			
I shall know			
			} 過去時之四形

423. Exception to Rule I. 第一則之例外。——茲有第一則之例外，其主文有過去時之時，而可續之以現在時無定形，以表示普遍的或習慣的事實 (Universal or habitual fact).

* 此是言現在時及未來時之主文。括弧中之十二句，皆屬屬文。然此屬文中，凡有三種之時，即現在，未來，過去是也。然以如此屬文，而接于如此主文，尚不見其有何等之礙也。故曰：無論如何之時，皆可續之也。

Principal Sentence,
(*Past Tense.*)

Dependent Sentence.
(*Present Tense.*)

They *learnt* at school, that honesty *is* the best policy. ¹
(彼等在學校所學，謂正直是為最良之處世方)

The students *were* taught, that the earth *moves* round the sun. (學生所被教者，地球是繞日而行也)

His illness *showed* him, that all men *are* mortal.
(彼之病乃所以教彼知得凡人皆歸于死也)

He *was* glad to hear, that his brother *is* industrious. ²
(他喜聞其兄弟之勤勉)

They *were* sorry to hear, that he *has* a bad temper.
(彼等悲聞彼有惡性品)

424. **Conjunction of Purpose 目的之接續詞。**——一屬文而以目的接續詞導入之時 (§ 291 *d*), 則左舉之兩規則不可不注意:—

(*a*, 主文之動詞為現在時或未來時之時, 則屬文之動詞, 要以 “*may*” (現在時) 而表示之。

(*b*) 主文之動詞為過去時之時, 則屬文之動詞, 要以 “*might*” (過去時) 而表示之 (依第一規則)。

	<i>Principal Sentence.</i>	<i>Dependent Sentence.</i>
現在時	無定形 He comes, (他來)	現在時
	連續形 He is coming,	that he <i>may</i> see me. (知是他可以會我)
	完全形 He has come,	
	完全連續形 He has been coming.	

1. Honesty is the best policy 普通事實也。

2. His brother is industrious 習慣事實也。

	<i>Principal Sentence.</i>	<i>Dependent Sentence.</i>
未來時	無定形 He will come,	that he <i>may</i> ^r see me.
	連續形 He will be coming,	
	完全形 He will have come,	
	完全 He will have been	
	連續形 coming.	
過去時	無定形 He came,	(過去時)
	連續形 He was coming,	that he <i>might</i> see ^e me.
	完全形 He had come,	
	完全 He had been com-	
	連續形 ing,	

備考，一“lest”一字(接續詞)，是與“that not”同。無論主文之動詞爲何等之時，皆可以此字續之。至可以續于此字之後之助動詞，惟“*should*”一字耳。

	<i>Principal Sentence.</i>	<i>Dependent Sentence.</i>
現在.....	He goes	{ lest he <i>should</i> see me. 或 that he <i>may</i> not see me. (他去如是他將不會我)
未來.....	He will go	{ lest he <i>should</i> see me. 或 that he <i>may</i> not see me.
過去.....	He went	{ lest he <i>shou'd</i> see me. 或 that he <i>might</i> not see me.

r. *May* 是與主文動詞之時而變其時，如本例之現在時與未來時爲 *may*，至過去時則變爲 *might* 惟 *should* 是續於 *lest* 而并不變其形。

425. **Conjunctions of Comparison 比較之接續詞**——屬文而用比較接續詞而導入之者，不拘主文之動詞爲何等之時，而于屬文可隨意用時以續之，故第一之規則於此爲無效。

<i>Principal Sentence.</i>	<i>Dependent Sentence.</i>
He <i>likes</i> you better,	than he <i>liked</i> me. ¹
	(他愛汝勝過他愛我)
He <i>liked</i> you better,	than he <i>likes</i> me.
He <i>will like</i> you better,	than he <i>has liked</i> me.
He <i>has liked</i> you better,	than he <i>liked</i> me.
He <i>liked</i> you better,	than he <i>is liking</i> me. ²
He <i>will like</i> you better,	than he <i>was liking</i> me, etc.

備考 1.—此比較若用“as well as”以代“than”時，亦是依上之特別規則，即依言者之意向，其屬文之時可隨意用之，不必拘於主文之時也。

He *likes* you as well as he *liked* me.

He *will like* you as well as he *has liked* me, etc.

備考 2.—“*Than*”或“*a: well as*”之後而省畧動詞時，則屬文所省畧之動詞之時，亦宜與主文所述出之動詞之時同。

He *liked* you better than (*he liked* 略) me.

He *will like* you as well as (*he will like* 略) me

試答出下舉各屬文之動詞，孰爲正孰爲誤，若其有誤用之者，改正之：—

1. 依第一則，則對此主文之過去時，是不得用“在時”于屬文，但此屬文是以比較接續詞之“*than*”導入，故得用“*likes*”（現在）。

2. 又此例若依原則，則對於主文之過去時，是不可不用過去時於屬文，但亦因其有比較接續詞之“*than*”，故得隨意用現在時以續之。

(1) I was informed that he *had been reading* a book. (2) He did not say when he *will come*. (3) No one knew whether he *intended* to come or not. (4) He concealed from me what his plans *are*. (5) I fear that you *were* displeased with me yesterday. (6) I shall soon find out why you *were* so displeased. (7) His face was so changed that I *do* not know him again. (8) The teacher gave me a prize that I *may work* hard next year. (9) The teacher has given him a prize that I *may work* hard next year. (10) You will be pleased to hear that I *have won* a prize. (11) He asked me why I *wish* to go away so soon. (12) No one understood how he *can* do so much work. (13) He had come that he *might* help me to finish the task. (14) You did not tell me when you *intend* to return home. (15) I was sorry to find that I *have displeased* you. (16) I hope that you *will pardon* me soon. (17) I did not know why you *give* me this order. (18) We shall soon know what progress he *has made*. (19) We heard to-day what progress he *has made*. (20) You never told us that honesty *was* the best policy. (21) They told me that my brother *was* fond of his book. (22) He gave me a good advice lest I *may* fall into evil ways. (23) He taught me that good deeds *were* never lost. (24) He lends me his book, that I *might* be saved the expense of buying one.

答 案 及 譯 解

1. 正. (余已報告彼之讀書事)
2. 誤. 宜改 will 爲 would. (他不曾其何時將來)
3. 正. 無人知其有意來與不來)
4. 誤. 宜改 are 爲 were. (彼隱其計畫而不俾余知)
5. 正. (余恐汝昨日不高興我)
6. 正. (余將不久而覺汝不高興我之理由)
7. 誤. 宜改 do 爲 did. (彼之面貌如此其改變, 所以余再遇他時都不能認識.)
8. 誤. 宜改 may 爲 might. (教師賜我一賞, 所以余于來年宜更加用工)
9. 正. (解同上)
10. 正. (汝將喜聞余之得賞事)
11. 誤. 宜改 wish 爲 wished. (他問余因何願去如此其速)
12. 誤. 宜改 can 爲 could. (無人知彼之何以能成事如此其多也)
13. 正. (他已來, 如此他可以助余完成此工課)
14. 誤. 宜改 intend 爲 intended. (汝不曾告余以汝回家之時)
15. 誤. 宜改 have displeased 爲 had displeased. (余得知汝去之意後, 余負愀然)
16. 正. (余望汝將宥我)
17. 誤. 宜改 give 爲 gave. (余不知汝因何授此命令于我)
18. 正. 余將不久就得知彼之何如進步)
19. 誤. 宜改 has made 爲 had made. (余今得聞彼之如何進步)
20. 誤. 宜改 was 爲 is 參照 § 423.
21. 正. 宜改 was 爲 is 較適當. (他告余知, 謂吾兄弟好其所藏之書)
22. 誤. 宜改 may fall 爲 should fall, 參照 § 424 之信等.
(他以好言勸戒我, 如此余可以下陷于惡矣)
23. 誤. 宜改 were 爲 are, 參照 § 423. (他所教余之言行, 余念念不忘)
24. 誤. 宜改 might 爲 may, 蓋 one=a book.
(他借其書於我, 如此余可省另買之費用)

§ 2 章二. DIRECT AND INDIRECT NARRATION.

直接說話法及間接說話法

426. 動詞在一文中爲報告他人之言，致成第二文者，第一文之動詞謂之報告動詞。Reporting Verb，第二文之動詞謂之被報告言辭 Reported Speech；如：—

<i>Reporting Verb.</i>	<i>Reported Speech.</i>
My father said	“It is time to go away.”
	(余父曰今是去之時)

427. 表示被報告言辭之方法有二；如：—

- (a) 覆述其人之原有言辭。
- (b) 不覆其原言辭，而單述其意旨。

428. 被報告言辭爲覆述人之言辭者，謂之直接說話法 Direct Narration，如前一例是也。

<i>Reporting Verb.</i>	<i>Reported Speech.</i>
My father said	“It is time to go away.”

備考 1.—此是爲用於印度國語通常之方法，若在英語之屬於此種之體，則不用“that”連結兩文。

備考 2.—如前例之直接說話文体，其被報告言辭，須用引用符“ ”以分離之。

429. 被報告言辭，不報告其人之原有言辭，而僅報告其言辭之意旨者，是謂之間接說話法 Indirect Narration；如：—

My father said	<i>that</i> it was time to go away.
	(余父謂今是可去之時)

備考.—此等組織，是爲以 *that* 連結兩文。

430. 報告動詞之時，絕不變更。但報告言辭之時，由直接說話以移於間接說話而受若干之變化者。則此變化是依報告動詞之時而定：—

431. 報告言辭之時，其變化有二大規則。而此二規則亦與 § 422 節之兩規則同。

第一則。——若報告動詞為過去時者，則被報告言辭動詞之時，須於過去時之凸形中而變化之。

第二則。——若報告動詞為現在時或未來時者，則被報告言辭動詞之時不變。

Rule II.

432. 第二則最為簡單，無庸深論，於此規則，其報告動詞必先用現在時或未來時。故被報告言辭之動詞，即由直接說話以移於間接說話時，其時亦全不變。

<i>Reporting Verb.</i> (<i>Present Tense.</i>)	<i>Reported Speech.</i> (<i>Any Tense.</i>)
{	<i>Direct.</i> He has told you, "I am coming." (他已告汝曰 余余現來)
	<i>Indirect.</i> He has told you that he is coming.
{	<i>Direct.</i> He says to his friend, "I have been reading." (他語其友曰 余我讀書)
	<i>Indirect.</i> He says to his friend, that he has been reading.

註。一第一括弧中，兩文之報告動詞為完全現在時，而被報告言辭之動詞為現在時這情形在第一段文 "I am coming" 之 "I" 即與其主文之 "he" 同一人，第二段文之 "he" 亦與其主文之 "he" 同一人，故其直接說話之被報告言辭，與間接說話之被報告言辭其兩文動詞之時，皆同為現在。又第二括弧中，兩文之報告動詞

爲現在無定形，而後報告言辭之動詞爲完全現在連續形，第一文之“*I*”與“*he*”同一人，第二文之“*he*”與“*he*”同一人。

	<i>Future Tense.</i>	<i>Any Tense.</i>
{	<i>Direct.</i> He will say	“Thou <i>hast spoken</i> falsely.”
	(彼將云)	汝已僞言)
	<i>Indirect.</i> He will tell Thee	that thou <i>hast spoken</i> falsely.
{	<i>Direct.</i> He will say,	“The boy <i>was</i> lazy.
	(	其童子是懶怠)
	<i>Indirect.</i> He will tell them	that the boy <i>was</i> lazy.

433. 有時被報告言辭用代名詞之“*he*,”但其果指言者自己抑指對話者全不明瞭：—

	<i>Reporting Verb.</i>	<i>Reported Speech.</i>
{	<i>Direct.</i> Gobind says to Cleon,	“I am wrong.”
	(歌品謂加倫曰)	余誤)
	Gobind says to Cleon,	“You are wrong.”
	<i>Indirect.</i> Gobind says to Cleon	that <i>he</i> (who?) is wrong.

註。一改上直接說話二文爲間接說話時，乃全與上直接說話同，但此文之“*he*”是指“Gobind”（言者）或指“Cleon”（對話者），皆屬於曖昧矣。

然則如何可免弊乎，蓋除用諸左例爲插入“*he*”所指之人名於其後外，是別無他法也。

	<i>Reporting Verb.</i>	<i>Reported Speech.</i>
{	<i>Direct.</i> Gobind says to Cleon,	“I am wrong.”
	<i>Indirect.</i> “ ” “ ”	that he (Gobind) is wrong
{	<i>Direct.</i> “ ” “ ”	“You are wrong.”
	<i>Indirect.</i> “ ” “ ”	that he (Cleon) is wrong.

試由下文之直接說話改爲間接說話：—

7. 余常敢言曰，“彼是犯罪之人，余則非也。”
I shall always affirm *that* he, and not I, is the guilty man.
8. 彼日日而言曰，“此地之氣候不適于余之健康，余不可不早日他適也。”
He says every day *that* this climate will not suit *his* health, and *that* he must go away as soon as he can.
9. 裁判官告於法庭曰，“此人有罪也，將于四日以內處以絞刑。”
The judge informs the court *that* the man *is* guilty and will be hanged in four day's time.
10. 彼人自白曰，“余是犯罪之人宜受此刑罰矣。”
The man has confessed. *That* he *is* guilty, and deserve the punishment.

Rule I.

434. 若詳細解釋第一則，則要注意于左舉之特別規則。

- (a) 現在時(被報告言辭者)，須變為一致之過去形。^{*}
- (b) 過去時不定形(被報告言辭者)，須變為過去完全形。
- (c) 過去時連續形(被報告言辭者)，須變為過去時完全連續形。

435. 特別則：—(a) 變現在(被報告言辭者)為與其相應之過去形；如：—

變 shall	為	should.
„ will	„	would.
„ may	„	might.
„ can	„	could.
„ come	„	came.
„ is coming	„	was coming.

* 假為其一致之過去形者，如變現在時無定形為過去時無定形，變現在時完全形為過去時完全形是也。

„ has come „ had come.
 „ has been coming „ had been coming.

Reporting Verb. Reported Speech.

{ *Direct.* He said, "The man *shall* come."... 現在
 { *Indirect.* He said, that the man *should* come... 過去
 { *Direct.* He said, "The man *will* come." 現在
 { *Indirect.* He said, that the man *would* come... 過去
 { *Direct.* He said, "The man *may* come." 現在
 { *Indirect.* He said, that the man *might* come... 過去
 { *Direct.* He said, "The man *can* come." 現在
 { *Indirect.* He said, that the man *could* come. ... 過去
 { *Direct.* He said, "The man *comes.*' 現在無定形
 { *Indirect.* He said, that the man *came*..... 過去無定形
 { *Direct.* He said, "The man *is coming.*' 現在連續形
 { *Indirect.* He said, that the man *was coming.* 過去連續形
 { *Direct.* He said, "The man *has come.*" ... 現在完全形
 { *Indirect.* He said, that the man *had come*..... 過去完全形
 { *Direct.* He said, "The man *has been coming.*" 現在完全連續
 { *Indirect.* He said, that the man *had been coming.* 過去完全連續

Examples. 例

Direct.—And Jacob said: "I *is* enough; my son Joseph is yet alive. I *will* go and see him before I *die.*"—(*Mt Testament.*)

直譯傳聞：是矣：吾子 約瑟尚生；余將於余未死之前見之。

Indirect.—And Jacob said that it *was* enough; that his

son Joseph *was* yet alive; and that if he *would* go and see him before he *died*.

Direct.—And David's anger was greatly kindled, and he said "The man who *hath done* this thing *deserveth* to die, and he *shall* restore the lamb fourfold."—*Old Testament*.

(大衛之怒火大熾而言曰，爲此事之人應死，且其可賠償羊四倍)

Indirect.—And David said that the man who *had done* this thing *deserved* to die, and that he *should* restore the lamb fourfold.

436. 特別則 (b):—變過去無定形(被報告言辭者)爲過去完全形:—

Reporting Verb. *Reported Speech.*

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| { | <i>Direct.</i> He said, The man <i>came</i> at six... 過去無定形
(他謂其人於六時來) | |
| | <i>Indirect.</i> He said, that the man <i>had</i> came at six.
過去完全形 | |
| { | <i>Direct.</i> He said, The rain <i>fell</i> yesterday. ... 過去無定形
(他謂昨日降了雨) | |
| | <i>Indirect.</i> He said, that the rain <i>had fallen</i> yesterday.
過去完全形 | |

437. 特別則 (c):—變過去連續形(被報告言辭)爲過去完全連續形:—

Reporting Verb. *Reported Speech.*

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| { | <i>Direct.</i> He said, "The man <i>was coming</i> ." 過去連續形 | |
| | <i>Indirect.</i> He said, that the man <i>had been coming</i> .
過去完全連續 | |

{ *Direct.* He said, "The rain *was falling* yesterday.
 { *Indirect.* He said, that the rain *had been falling* yesterday.
 過去連續形
 過去完全連續

(1) 試由下文之直接說話改爲間接說話：

We said to him, "The weather is stormy, and the way is long."
 He said to us, "The carriage has come, and we shall start soon."
 The teacher told us, "The prize will be presented to-morrow."
 He said to me, "The rain has been falling since daybreak and you cannot

We said to him, "Your fault will be pardoned, if you confess it."
 He said to me "I am glad to tell you that you are pardoned."
 He said "The man has started, but he has not yet come."
 We heard him say, "I will agree to what you propose, if you sign this."
 He said to me, "You are mistaken; you will not go to-day."
 Hasain said to me, "I shall leave this place, as soon as I can."
 Hasain said to me "You will be tired before you arrive."
 Hasain said, "Our friend arrived yesterday, but will go to-day."
 My son exclaimed, "Some one has taken the book I was reading."
 He made a promise, "I will come, if I can."
 He said, "I have been very ill, but am now better."
 Pilate replied to the Jews, "What I have written, I have written."
 He said to me, "You are guilty, and I am innocent."
 They said, "The boy is hiding in the place where we left him."
 They said, "The boy will soon be found; and we will bring him."

案 答 及 譯 解

1. 我等告其彼曰，“天氣暴烈而道遠。”

We told him that the weather was stormy and the way was long.

2. 他對我等言曰，“馬車已來，而我等宜早進出發。”

He told us that the carriage had come and that we should start soon.

3. 教師告我等曰：“賞品明日授與。”
The teacher told us, The prize will be presented to-morrow.
4. 彼言于余曰：“黎明已降雨，故汝不能去。”
He told me *that* the rain *had* been falling since day-break, and *that* I could not go.
5. 我等告彼曰：“汝若自白，則將宥汝之過。”
We told him *that* his fault *would* be pardoned, if he confessed it.
6. 他告余曰：“余喜告汝以汝之被赦事。”
He told me *that* he was glad to inform me that I was pardoned.
7. 彼人曰：“其人已出發，但尚未到。”
He said *that* the man *had* started, but *had* not yet come.
8. 我聞于彼曰：“若汝署名于是，余將表同情于汝之建議。”
We heard him say *that* he *would* agree to what we proposed, if we signed *that* (page).
9. 他言于余曰：“汝今日不去，汝誤矣。”
He told me *that* I was mistaken and *that* I should not go that day.
10. 哈當言於余曰：“余將待余之便時即離彼地。”
Hasain told me *that* he *would* leave *that* place, as soon as I could.
11. 哈當言於余曰：“汝將于未到以前就疲矣。”
Hasain told me *that* I should be tired before I arrived.
12. 哈當言於余曰：“我等之友昨日到來，但欲今日去。”
Hasain told me *that* our friend *had* arrived yesterday, but *would* go to-day.
13. 吾兒叫曰：“有人拿去余所讀之書。”
My son exclaimed *that* some one *had* taken the book he was reading.
14. 他已允曰：“余若可能，余必來。”
He made a promise *that* he *would* come, if he could.
15. 彼人言曰：“余已經痊癒，但今猶病勢甚。”
He said *that* he *had* been very ill, but was now better.
16. 比列答猶太人曰：“其所寫余已寫矣。”
Phileas replied to the Jews *that* what he *had* written he *had* written.

17. 他告于余曰，“汝有罪而我無罪。”
He *told* me that I *was* guilty, and that he *was* innocent.
18. 彼等曰，“童子隱於我等與彼分離之處。”
They said that the boy *was* hiding in the place where we left him.
19. 彼等曰，“童子不久將被尋出，而我等可携彼而來。”
They said *that* the boy *would* soon be found, and *that* they *would* bring him.

(2) 試由下文之間接說話爲直接說話：—

1. He made them understand that he would soon return.
2. He told them that he had been robbed of book which he had bought.
3. He said that he was very sorry for the fault he had committed.
4. They all said to him that he deserved to be pardoned.
5. They affirmed that he was the best worker they had seen.
6. He admitted that he had not worked so hard as Ram had done.
7. He heard them say that he did not deserve the prize.
8. He promised them that he would do it as soon as he could.
9. They said that he deserved their thanks for all he had done.
10. All who heard this said that he was speaking the truth.
11. He said that he had been three years in jail, and yet was innocent.
12. They told him they would never believe what he said.

13. He replied that he would prove what he had said to be true.
14. My brother told me that he had been reading all day.
15. My father told me that I was wrong and I would be fined.
16. They replied that if my fault was proved I would pay the fine.
17. I admitted that I had acted foolishly in what I did.

答 案 及 譯 解

1. 他已使彼等知得謂其將速回來。
"I will soon return," said he, and he made them understand this.
2. 他告彼等，謂其所購來之書已被盜去。
"I have been robbed," said he, "of the book which I have bought."
3. 彼謂他甚煩惱，因該過失是由彼所為也。
"I am very sorry," said he, "for the fault I have committed."
4. 彼等皆對彼言，謂彼應當得赦宥。
They all said to him, "you deserve to be pardoned."
5. 彼等確言，謂他是彼等所見中之最良勞動者。
They affirmed, "You are the best worker we have seen."
6. 彼已承認，謂彼不如林母之勤勉。
I admitted he, "I have not worked so hard as Ram has done."
7. 他聞彼等言，謂他不應受賞。
He heard them say, "You do not deserve the prize."
8. 他已允彼等，謂其於何時可而即為之。
He told them, "I promised you that I will do it as soon as I can."
9. 彼等謂其應受彼等之感謝，因一切皆由其所成也。
"You deserve our thanks," said they, for all that you have done.
10. 凡人皆謂此言，謂他是講真實。
"All who heard this," said He is speaking the truth.

11. 他謂他已入獄三年，而尚未定罪。
 "I have been three years in jail," said he, "and yet I am innocent."
12. 彼等告他謂彼等將全不信他所言。
 They told him, "We will never believe what you say."
13. 他回答，謂他將證其所言之真寔。
 He replied, "I will prove what I have said to be true."
14. 吾兄弟告余，謂其已終日讀書。
 "I have been reading all day," said my brother.
15. 吾父告余，謂余已差誤而應罰金。
 "You are wrong," said my father to me, "and you will be fined."
16. 余回答，謂若能證明余之寔，余將交出罰金。
 "I replied, "if my fault is proved, I will pay the fined."
17. 余已承認，謂余所行是愚蠢之行。
 I have acted foolishly said I, "in what I did."

註.—did 或 had done 之謂。

438. 此第一例尚有一例外，即與 § 323 「時之次序」之例外同。

被報告言辭，若關於普通或習慣之事實者，則被報告言辭之現在時之無定形，是不變為一致過去時，而惟存其原有之本體耳，

Past Tense. *Present Tense.*

{ *Direct.* He said, "We *cannot* be quite happy in this life."
 { *Indirect.* He said, "that we *cannot* be quite happy in this life."

(他謂吾人在此世生活，不能得完全之幸福，

{ *Direct.* He said, "The earth *moves* round the sun."
 { *Indirect.* He said, that the earth *moves* round the sun.

(他謂地球繞日而行)

*Past Tense.**Present Tense.*

{ *Direct.* He said, God *rules* and *governs* all things."

{ *Indirect.* He said, that God *rules* and *governs* all thing.

(他謂神爲萬物之主宰)

{ *Direct.* He reminded me, "when the cat *is* away, the mice *play*."

{ *Indirect.* He reminded me, that when the cat *is* away the mice *play*.

(他提醒余, 謂貓去則鼠舞)

439. 於被報告言辭, 其依第一例以現在時而變爲過去時者, 則示近者之形容詞, 動詞, 或副詞, 亦變爲示遠者之形容詞, 動詞及副詞。

依通例所變者如次:—

Now	變爲 then.	To-day	變爲 that day.
This 或 these	„ that 或 those.	To-morrow	„ Next day.
Hither	„ thither.	Yesterday	„ the previous day.
Here	„ there.	Last night	„ the previous night.
Hence	„ thence.	Ago	„ before.
Thus	„ so.	Now	„ then.
Come	„ go.		

Reporting Verb. *Reported Speech.*

{ *Direct.* He said, "I *will* leave you *now*."

{ *Indirect.* He said that he *would* leave them *then*.

{ *Direct.* He said, "I *will* come *here*."

{ *Indirect.* He said that he *would* go *there*.

Reporting Verb. Reported Speech.

- { *Direct.* He said to us, "Are you going away to-day?"
 { *Indirect.* He inquired of us Whether we were going that day.
 { *Direct.* He said to me "Why did you strike me."
 { *Indirect.* He demanded* of me Why I had struck him.

註一 如前所論，由直接說話轉爲間接說話之理，吾知讀者必尙有所未明處，茲更申論之。

(a) 凡移疑問文於間接說話法時，若其直接說話法之疑問文中有疑問的語者，固可直用其疑問的語以覆其首文，如第一例之 "where" 第二例 "where" 第三例之 "why" 是也。至如第四例之直接說話法疑問文中，無疑問的語時，則 "whether" 或 "if" 皆插入於報告動詞之後，如第四例爲 "whether we were going that day" 段是之故耳。至於 "if" 之法示例如左：—

- { *Direct.* He asked, "will you go with me."
 { *Indirect.* He asked if I would go with him.

(b) 間接說話法之報告動詞，除用 "asked" 或 "to inquire" 之外，亦有用 "to wish," "to know," "to question," "to doubt," "to demand" 等語。

(c) 主位有在於直接說話法時，宜置於動詞之後，至置爲間接說話法時，則置於動詞之前。如第三例之直接文，均 "are (前) you going away to-day." 至置爲間接文時，則爲 "whether (後) we were going that day."

441. **Imperative Sentences 命令文：**—被報告言辭若爲命令文(參照 § 2)，則報告動詞之如 "say" 或 "tell" 等語，須變爲有命令 (command)，或訓誡 (precept)，或願望 (entreaty) 等意義之動詞。而學者亦須擇其動詞之最適合其意義者(即依前後之文義)乃可用。

由直接說話法移於間接說話法之命令文，其命令法 (Imperative mood) 須改用無定法 (Infinitive)。

Demanded 問之聲，其次亦要附以 *of*。

Reporting Verb. *Reported Imperative.*

<p>{ <i>Direct.</i> He <i>said</i> to his servants, "Go away at once." }</p> <p>{ <i>Indirect.</i> He <i>ordered</i> his servants <i>to go</i> away at once, }</p>	<p>} <i>Com- mand.</i> 命令</p>
<p>{ <i>Direct.</i> He <i>said</i> to his friend, "Work steadily." }</p> <p>{ <i>Indirect.</i> He <i>advised</i> his friend <i>to work</i> steadily. }</p>	<p>} <i>Precat.</i> 勸導</p>
<p>{ <i>Direct.</i> He <i>said</i> to the student, "Do not sit there." }</p> <p>{ <i>Indirect.</i> He <i>forbade</i> the student <i>to sit</i> there. }</p>	<p>} <i>Prohibi- tion.</i> 禁止</p>
<p>{ <i>Direct.</i> He <i>said</i> to his master, "Pardon me sir." }</p> <p>{ <i>Indirect.</i> He <i>begged</i> his master <i>to pardon</i> him }</p>	<p>} <i>Entreaty.</i> 願望</p>
<p>{ <i>Direct.</i> He <i>said</i> to his friend, "Please lend me your book." }</p> <p>{ <i>Indirect.</i> He <i>asked</i> his friend <i>to be kind enough to lend</i> him his book. }</p>	<p>} <i>Request.</i> 請求</p>

從位節附隨於命令文時，則從位節動詞之時，是依報告動詞之時而規定之 (§ 431 之第一則)。

註：一報告動詞之時為過去時者，則附隨于命令文從位節動詞之時，須變為過去時；如下第一例文，其報告動詞是為過去時原形也，故從位之 "tell" 變為 told 過去時原形。第二例文，其報告動詞是為過去時原形也，故從位節之 "return" 變為 returned (過去時原形)。

Reporting Verb. *Reported Speech.*

<p>{ <i>Direct.</i> He <i>said</i> to his servant, "Do as I tell you." }</p> <p>{ <i>Indirect.</i> He <i>ordered</i> to his servant <i>to do</i> as he <i>told</i> him. }</p>	
<p>{ <i>Direct.</i> He <i>said</i> to his friend, "Wait here till I return." }</p> <p>{ <i>Indirect.</i> He <i>begged</i> his friend <i>to wait</i> there till he <i>re- turned</i>. }</p>	

442. Exclamatory Sentences 感嘆文。—— 被報告言辭，若由感嘆文或願望文 (參照 § 2) 所成立時，則報告文動

詞之“say”或“tell,”須變爲“exclaim”“cry out,”“pray”等。而學者亦須擇其動詞之適合其意義者(即前後之意義),乃可用。

<i>Reporting Verb.</i>	<i>Reported Exclamation.</i>
{ <i>Direct.</i> He said, { <i>Indirect.</i> He exclaimed with delight, that his friend had	“Hurrah! my friend is come.” come.
{ <i>Direct.</i> He said to them all, { <i>Indirect.</i> He bade good-bye	“Good-bye, my friends!” to all his friends.
{ <i>Direct.</i> He said, { <i>Indirect.</i> He prayed that God	“May God pardon this sinner!” would pardon that sinner.
{ <i>Direct.</i> He said { <i>Indirect.</i> He confessed with regret	“Alas! how foolish I have been.” that he had been very foolish

I. 左舉之數例文,是同一言辭中而混以確言,疑問,命令,三意義者:—

I. **Direct.**—And he said, “I will arise and go to my father, and will say unto him: Father, I have sinned against heaven, and before thee, and am no more worthy to be called thy son; make me as one of thy hired servants.”—*New Testament:*

彼人曰，余將起而之吾父遂而對彼言曰，父呀，余知已犯罪而背天逆父，如此是無可以再稱為汝之子之價值矣；汝使余為汝僮僕之一人可也。

Indirect.—And he said that he *would arise* and go to his father, and *would confess* that he *had sinned* against heaven and against him, and *was* no more worthy to be called his son; and that he *would entreat* his father to make him one of his hired servants.

2. **Direct**—“What is *this* strange outcry?” said Socrates; “I *sent* the woman away mainly in order that they might not offend in *this* way; for I *have heard* that a man should die in peace. *Be* quite then and *have* patience.

柏格拉第言曰，“此怪叫喊胡為乎來哉，余已甚依次序遣彼婦人去矣，如此彼等應不怒此也；蓋余已聞彼人將從容以就死，請肅靜而忍耐也可。

Indirect.—Socrates *inquired* of them what *that* strange outcry *was*. He *reminded* them that he *had sent* the woman away mainly in order that might not offend in *that* way; for he *had heard* that a man should die in peace. He *begged* them therefore *to be* quite and *have* patience.

Direct.—The teacher became angry with the student and *said*, “Why *have* you again *disturbed* the class in *this* way? I *have told* you before, that when I *am speaking*, you should be silent. *Leave* the room and *do not return* again to-day.

教師對於學生憤怒而言曰，“汝何何故如是擾亂此教室乎，余前已語過汝於余講論之時，汝須肅靜也。今汝如此，汝可立離此教室，且今日勿再來。

Indirect.—The teacher became angry with the student and *inquired* of him why he *had again disturbed* the class in *that* way. He *reminded* him that he *had told* him before that

he (the student) should be silent when he (the master) *was speaking*. He *ordered* him therefore *to leave* the room, *and forbade* him *to return* again *that day*.

II. 試將下文之直接說話法改爲間接說話法：—

1. And Reuben said unto them, "Shed no blood; cast Joseph into this pit that is in the wilderness, but lay no hand upon him.—*Old Testament*."

2. And Judah said unto his brethren, "What profit is it, if we slay our brother and conceal his blood? Come, let us sell him to the Ishmaelites, and let not our hand be upon him: for he is our brother and our flesh."—*Old Testament*."

3. Joseph said to James, "I can tell you what strikes me as the most useful machine in the world." James replied, "Can you, Joseph? I should like to hear of it. What is it used for?"

4. "What do you mean?" asked the man; "how can a rope be used for binding flour?" "A rope may be used for anything," replied the man, "when I do not wish to lend it."

5. Once a rich man said to his poorer brother, "Why, do you not enter the service of the king, so that you may relieve yourself from the baseness of labour?"

6. Finding no remedy, he said to himself, "It is better to die than to live in such misery as I am compelled to suffer from a master who treats me and always has treated me so unkindly."

7. All her maidens watching said, "She must weep, or she will die."—*Tennyson*.

8. And they said one to another, "We are verily guilty concerning our brother, in that we saw the distress of his soul, when he besought us, and we would not hear: therefore is this distress come upon us."—*Old Testament*.

9. The violent man said, "What violence have I done? What anger have I been guilty of?" Then the others laughed and said to him, "Why should we speak? You have given us ocular proof of your violent temper."

10. And Nathan said unto David, "Thou art the man."

11. The robber said to Alexander, "I am thy captive: I must hear what thou art pleased to say, and endure what thou art pleased to inflict. But my soul is unconquered; and if reply at all to thy reproaches, I will reply to thee like a free man."

12. "You are old, Father William" the young man cried,
 "The locks that are left you are grey;
 You are hale, Father William, a hale old man;
 Now tell me the reason I pray."

13. "I am sorry indeed," replied the king, "that my vessel is already chosen; and I cannot therefore sail with the son of the man who severed my father."—*Dickens*.

14. He cried to them in agony, "Row back at any risk! I cannot bear to leave her behind to be drowned."—*Dickens*.

15. He made a promise to the king's surgeon, saying;

“Bleed the king to death with this lancet, and I will give you a thousand pieces of gold; and when I ascend the throne you shall be my chief minister.”

II. 答案及譯解

1. Reben advised them to shed no blood; to cast Joseph into that pit that was in the wilderness, but lay no hand upon him.

魯賓勸告彼等，謂無庸流血；但將約瑟投於此曠野中之阱而勿以手惹他云。

2. Judah begged them to consider what profit it would be, if they slew their brother and concealed his blood; he advised them therefore to sell him to the Ishmaelites and let it not to allow their hand to be upon him, since he was their brother and their flesh.

猶大求彼等一思，謂彼等殺其兄弟而匿血，是無如何利益；他勸彼等將彼子以撒賣列人，因彼弟是之彼兄弟，而為彼等之骨肉，則不可以彼等之手加于彼云。

3. Joseph in talking to James, remarked that he could tell him what struck him Joseph as the most useful machine in the world. James told him in reply that he would like to hear of it, and asked to be informed what it was used for.

約瑟與雅各同言，謂彼能告他以可觀之事，即知世界上最有用之機器也者。雅各同答語，謂他欲聞此事，且求詳告機器之用途。

4. The man inquired of him what he meant, and how a rope could be used for binding flour--to which the man replied, that a rope could be used for any thing, when he did not wish to lend it.

那人問他是何意，謂繩之可用以束粉者；其人同答，謂其不願貸借繩時，而能以何物皆可用云。

5. The rich man once inquired of his poorer brother why he did not enter the service of the king, so that he might relieve himself of the tediousness of labour.

有一富人嘗問于其貧兄弟，謂其因何不去供王之僕役，如此則其可以籍彼卑賤之事業，以圖生活云。

6. Finding no remedy, he said to himself that it was better to die than to live in such misery as he was compelled to suffer from a master who treated him, and always had treated him so unkindly.

他自己言，謂若無術可救，以其生而受主人如此之薄待而沉于悲境，則不如死之爲得矣。

7. All her maidens watching said that she must weep or she would die.

一切看守彼女之侍女言，謂彼女須要泣，若不泣則將死。

8. And they said to one another that they were verily guilty concerning their brother, in that they saw the distress of his soul, when he besought them and they would not hear; that distress therefore had come upon them.

彼等互相而言，謂彼等因其兄弟之事而定爲有罪，他懇求彼等時，彼等雖然見其心之苦，但不聽之，故此苦又臨于彼等云。

9. The violent man inquired what violence he had done, and what anger he had been guilty of. Then the other laughed and said that there was no need for them to speak, as he given them ocular proof of his violent temper.

暴虐之人發問，謂彼是爲過如何暴虐之事乎，彼又爲過如何憤怒之事而有罪乎。于是他人發笑而言，謂此是無庸彼等多辯，蓋彼暴虐之人，已將其暴虐性情示彼等以定證云。

10. And Nathan said unto David that he [David] was the man.

大衛曰：耶和華之言，謂耶和華可以謂之人矣。

11. The ruler, in his conversation with Alexander, said that he was his captive, and must hear what he was pleased to say and endure what he was pleased to inflict, but that his soul was unrequered, and if he replied at all that his reproaches, he would reply like a free man.

亞歷山大與亞歷山大之言，謂彼是其之俘虜，故不能不聽他之所欲言與他之所欲加，但彼之精神不屈服他，故彼之對答他之一切言語時，他如自由人對答云。

12. The young man, addressing Father William, said that he was an old man, and that the locks left to him were grey, but that nevertheless he was a

hale old man; and her begged to be told reason.

少年曾於父咸處，謂彼是一老人矣，彼所披之髮已霜白矣，雖然，但猶是一強壯老人也，故他求彼語他以道理云。

13. The king replied that he was sorry indeed that his vessel was already chossen, and that he could not therefore sail with the son of the man who had served his father.

王則答，謂其船已選定，而不能與任其父之人之子同航，則深為可惜。

14. He cried to them in agony that they must row back at any risk, as he could not bear to leave her behind to be drowned.

彼抱苦悶對彼等而呼，謂不拘如何危險都要返身回去，蓋彼不忍彼女之被溺而不救云。

15. He told the king's surgeons to bleed the king to death with that lancet, and made him a promise that if he did so, he would give him a thousand pieces of gold, and when he ascended the throne, he would make him his chief minister.

彼諭王之侍醫，若其能以刃針(外科所用)刺王至于流血而死，則彼將與他金貨千片，且至其登王位時，用他為其首相云。

III. 試由下文之間接說語法改為直接說話法

1. Damon, before his execution, requested but one favour from Dionysius, which was that he might be permitted to visit his wife and children, who were at that time a considerable distance from him, promising faithfully to return on the day appointed.

2. This Dionysius refused to grant, unless some person could be found who would consent to suffer death in his stead, if he did not perform his promise.

3. In a short speech Pythias told the surrounding multi-

tude that his dear friend, Damon, would soon arrive; but he hoped not before his own death had saved a life so dear as Damon's was to his family, his friends, and his country.

4. He sent his compliments to Frances, Clavering, and Monson, and charged them to protect Raja Garu Das, who was about to become the had of the Brahama of Bengal.

5. The governor of the town then called out with a loud voice, and ordered Androcles to explain to them how a savage and hungry lion could thus in a moment have forgotten its innate disposition, and be converted all of a sudden into a harmless animal.

6. Androcles then explained to them that that very lion, which was standing before them, had been his friend and partner in the wood and had for that reason spared his life, as they now saw.

7. Socrates then suggested to Glaucon that the entire abolition of the guards which he (Glaucon) recommended could not remedy the evils which he desired to remove, and he inquired of Glaucon whether he knew by personal examination that the guards did their work as badly as he imagined.

8. When he reached home, his father asked him where his ship was and what had become of his merchandise. The son in reply told him what had happened,—how he had given up his vessel with its cargo, and had taken in exchange the slaves and set them free, and how he had consented to

take this girl back with him and make her his wife.

9. When they asked Thales what thing in the world was more universal than anything else, he replied that Hope was the most universal thing, because Hope remained with those who had nothing else left.

10. When Solomon and Periander were sitting together over their cups, Periander, finding that Solon was more silent than usual, asked him whether he was silent for want of words or because he was a fool. Solon told him in reply that no fool could be silent over his cups.

III. 答案及譯解

1. "Grant me but one favour, O Demosias," said Damon, "before I am executed; permit me visit my wife and children, who are at this time separated from me by a long distance; and I promise faithfully to return by the day appointed."

此文音曰：“得墨尼亞斯，賜余僅一恩與汝，在余未行處決之前，許余歸去看妻子，彼等現住于與余相隔之地也；余允實守所指定之期限而歸。”

2. "I refuse," said Demosias, "to grant this request, unless some one can be found, who will consent to suffer death in your stead, if you should fail to perform your promise."

得墨尼亞斯曰：“余不允，若果許此請求，除非尋得一人於汝或不服行汝之約，彼肯替汝受之死而已。”

3. In a short speech Pythias addressed the surrounding multitude and said, "My dear friends, Damon, will soon arrive; but I hope not before my death has saved a life so dear as Damon's is to his family, his friends, and his country."

遜德利亞斯以簡單之言告于集會之人曰，“余之劍頭友達文不久就到；但余固決定以己之一死，而替能救其宗族，其朋友，其宗族之貴人達文之死；故不望其於余未死之前而到也。

4. “I senting complaints to you,” said he in his last message to Francis, Clavering, and Manson, “and beg of you to protect Raja Gura Das, who is about to become the head of Brahmans of Bengal.”

彼寄法蘭西斯，克勞維令，及蒙善之前書余曰請君于汝而求汝保護 Gura Das 王，彼是將為孟加拉之貴族之首領也。”

註.—Raja 印度一地方之王，Brahmans (或 Brahmin) 印度人最高之階級 Bengal (或 Bengale) 恒河下游平原之一州。

5. “The governor of the town then called out with a loud voice and said.—“Explain to us, O Androcles, how a savage and hungry lion can thus in a moment have forgotten its innate disposition and be converted all of a sudden into a harmless animal”

市司乃大聲呼曰，“呼，安德羅哥市，如何其猛惡與飢餓之獅能于一
◎時而忘其本性，而俄然變為害無之獸乎，請詳解我得知之。”

6. Androcies then explained the fact to them in the following words:—“This very lion, which is standing before you, was my friend and partner in the woods, and has for this reason spared my life, as you now see”

安德羅哥市乃解明其事情曰左：—“此奇獅就是立於汝等之前如汝所見者，因吾友與吾伴偶在森中之故，是以救吾生命。”

7. Socrates then said:—“I am not sure, O Glaucou, that the entire abolition of the guards which he (Glaucou) recommended can not remedy the evil which you desire to remove; do you know by personal examination that the guards do their work as body as you imagine?”

格勞提第乃言曰，“呼，格羅羅，余不能不慮汝所欲除之害惡，可與第汝往來之全等衛護兵，當其除之者也，護兵之誤其候守，皆如汝意申事，汝曾由自己檢度而知之乎。”

8. When he reached home, his father said to him, “where is your ship, and has become of your merchandise?” “I have given up,” said the son in reply, “my vessel with its cargo, I have taken in changed the slaves and set them free; and I have consented to take this girl back with me and make her my wife.”

彼搬家時其父曾于彼曰，汝之船之所在與汝之貨物之結果何如。”其子對曰，“余已交付吾船與其貨物矣，余以其交與奴隸而放之，余又携此女同歸而允娶他爲妻。”

9. "Tell us," they said, "O Thales," "what thing in the world is more universal than anything else?" "Hope," he answered, "is the most universal thing, because Hope remains with those who have nothing else left."

彼等曰，“噫，德黎，詳告我們於世界上諸事狀，以何者爲最普遍乎？”彼答曰，其「希望」乎，因他事物可盡喪失而無存，獨希望則留存，故希望爲是最普遍者也。

10. When Solomon and Perander were sitting together over their cups, Perander, finding that Solomon was more silent than usual, said:—"Is it for want of words, O Solomon, that you are silent, or is it because you are a fool?" "A fool," said Solomon in reply, "cannot be silent over his cups."

產倫與波蘭德二人對飲時，波蘭德「檢倫」檢倫比乎平常爲少言，乃問曰

“噫檢倫，此時正宜高談闊論之時，乃汝忽爲緘默，是因汝愚乎，檢倫答曰，“愚者不能飲酒而緘默也。”

Chapter XV. 第十五編

THE ANALYSIS OF WORDS:

言辭之分解

SUFFIXES AND PREFIXES.

添尾字及添首字

433. 辭之不能由其現在之形而改爲更簡單之形者，是名之爲單辭。(Simple)或原辭(primary；如，*fish, good, drink, man, hope*是也。此種辭又名之爲辭根 Root.

444. 辭之結合二個之辭根即單辭而成形者名之爲複辭 (Compound Word): 如 *in-pot*, *d'or-step*, *horse-shoe*, *drinking-water* 是也

445. 辭之以不變字 (Particle) 而加附于辭根之首, 或辭根之末, 或辭根之兩方, 以成形者, 是名之爲辭枝 Derivative; 如 *un* (不變) -*man* (辭根) -*ly* (不變語) 是也。

備考. 一辭枝又能變化其辭之中心字以造形; 如 *tel*, *tail*, *strike*, *luck* 是也。

446. 不變字而加附于辭根之末者, 是名之爲添尾字; 如 “good,” “good-ness,”

註. —good-ness 尾末之 *ness* 爲添尾字, 而 good 爲辭根。

447. 變化字而加附于辭根之末者, 是名之爲添首字; 如 “deed,” “mis-deed.”

註. —mis-deed 之首端之 *mis* 是爲添首字。

447. 英語中之添尾字與添首字, 其由來之本源有三; 如左:—

- I. English itself 英本國語.
- II. Latin r French 拉丁語或法蘭西語.
- III. Greek 希臘語.

§ I 章一. ENGLISH SUFFIXES.

英語之添尾字

Nouns. 名詞

448 An Agent 或 Doer (動作者):—

註. 一此的所變之添尾字, 皆有作者之動作意義也; 如 “bagger” 是行爲

乞食之人, "tailor" 是言為裁縫之人, 其餘可類推。

-er, -ar, -or:—bak-er 造麵包人, do-er 動作者, beg-er 乞丐, li-ar 虛言者, tail-or 裁縫人, sail-or 水夫, cloth-i-er 織布人, 布商, court-i-er 朝臣, 侍臣, 諂諛者, law-y-er 法律家, 辯護士, sawy-cr 鋸者, 挽木者。

-ster (陰性); spin-ster 紡績婦, (song-ster 歌女, ma't-ster 製造麥芽人 trick-ster 欺騙者, young-ster 年少者, huck-ster 小賣商人等辭, 其添尾字之 *ster* 非示陰性, 蓋單表示動作者之意)。

-ard, -art:—Cow-ard 怯懦者, drunk-ard 沉飲家, slugg-ard 懶惰者, dot-ard 老耄者, bragg-ard 大言家, (此添尾字有「過度」之意義, 若嚴格論其本源, 則為德意志語, 而非英語)。

450. **Abstract Nouns** 抽象名詞而表示狀態 *state*, 動作 *action*, 境遇 *condition* 者。

-dom:—wis-dom 智慧, king-dom 王國, free-dom 自由, martyr-dom 為道而殺身事, serf-dom 奴隸之事。

-hood, -head:—good-head 神道, man-hood 壯年時代, child-hood 幼年時代, neighbour-hood 近隣, mother-hood 母之事, widow-hood 寡婦之事。

-ric:—bishop-ric 僧位之職(此為「權根」)。

-ledge, -lock:—know-ledge 智識, wed-lock 婚姻。

-ing:—learn-ing 學問, writ-ing 習字, 書寫, walk-ing 散步(名動詞的添尾字)。

-ness:—good-ness 善良, hoil-ness 神經, wit-ness 證據(由 *wis* 或 *wit* 成形)。

-red:—hat-*red* 憎惡, kind-*red* 親戚.

-ship, *scape*:—friend-*ship* 友誼, lord-*ship* 君主之事, 貴族之權威, wor-*ship* 崇拜, land-*scape* 風景.

-th:—heal-*th* 康健, steal-*th* 竊盜, bread-*th* 廣幅, dep-*th* 深, wid-*th* 廣, tru-*th* 信實, leng-*th* 長.

-t, 或 -d:—heigh-*t* 高, sigh-*t* 光景, dee-*d* (由 do 造形) 行爲, cu-*d* 由 *chew* 以造形) 咀嚼, (獸類之食法).

451. Diminutives (指幼細或渺少之事物之名詞):—

-el, -le.—nav-*el* (nave) 臍, satch-*el* (sack) 小袋, freck-*el* (freak) 斑點, spark-*le* 火花.

-en;—chick-*en* (由 *cock* 以造形) 雛鷄, kitt-*en* (由 *cat*) 小貓, maid-*en* 處女.

-ing:—farth-*ing* 小銅貨(約我五個錢), tith-*ing* 十分一, 十人組, shill-*ing* 英銀貨(十二片司), whit-*ing* 小魚之名, wild-*ing* 野生之小樹.

-ling:—duck-*ling* 小家鴨, gas-*ling* 小鷺, dar-*ling* 所寵愛之人, strip-*ling* 少年, suck-*ling* 乳子, seed-*ling* 生子之植物, change-*ling* 換子, hire-*ling* 僱夫, 加附 *le* 與 *ing* 二重之派尾字.

-kin:—lamb-*kin* 羊子, fir-*kin* 酒量之名, Peter-*kin* 或 Per-*kin* 萍果酒, nap-*kin* 餐巾, (食餐時用).

-ock:—hill-*ock* 小丘, bull-*ock* 小牛, padd-*ock* (由 *pad*) 小養獸苑, humm-*ock* (由 *hump*) 圓小丘, 水塊.

-ie, -y:—bird-*ie* 小鳥, bab-*y* 稚兒, lass-*ie* 少女, dadd-*y* 爹爹; 小孩呼父之 endearment 親愛也).

462 Adjectives 形容詞.

-ed (有 *like* (如) *having* (有)之意):—wretch-ed 卑, letter-ed 博學, land-ed 有土地, gift-ed 饋品, ragg-ed 着襤褸, 如鋸齒.

-en (*made of* 製造之意):—wood-en 木製的, braz-en 青銅製的, earth-en 土製的, silk-en 絹糸製的, wax-en 蠟製的.

-ful (*ful of* 充盈之意):—fear-ful 恐甚, play-ful 盛遊戲, hope-ful 大希望, wil-ful 猜極, truth-ful 信實極.

-ish (*somewhat like* 稍似之意):—girl-ish 女兒樣, whit-ish 稍白, self-ish 私慾, brut-ish 禽獸之形, mobb-ish 僭越的, wolf-ish 似狼, pal-ish 青白之狀, snapp-ish 易發怒, (此添尾字常含有輕之意).

-ly (有 *like* (似)之意):—God-ly 如神, love-ly 可愛, king-ly 如王, sick-ly 如病, kind-ly 親切, friend-ly 友情.

-like:—God-like 如神, war-like 好戰的, lady-like 婦女之風, business-like 秩序的.

-less (有 *without* (無)之意):—shame-less 無恥, house-less 無家, hope-less 無望, cease-less 無間斷, sleep-less 無睡, cause-less 無理由, resist-less 無抵抗, worth-less 無價值.

-y (有 *pertaining to* (關於) *abounding in* (充之)之意):—hill-y 多丘陵, storm-y 暴風雨的, bush-y 繁茂, rock-y 多岩石, wool-y 多毛, smok-y 多烟, w. ood-y 多木, trust-y 可信賴, feather-y 多羽毛.

-some (有 *full of* (充之) *inclined to* (傾向于)之意):—game-some 快活, burden-some 煩雜, trouble-some 困難, win-some 快活, hand-some 精緻, frolic-some 樂, quarrel-some 好爭.

-ward (有 *turning to* (向于)之意):—for-ward 前方.

south-ward 南方, down-ward 下方, fro-ward 頑固, way-ward 偏僻, heaven-ward 天之方, home-ward 自家之方.

-teen, -ty (有 *ten* (十)之意):—nine-teen 十九, twenty 二十, thir-teen 十三, etc.

-th (有 *order* (順序)之意):—six-th 第六號, seven-th 第七號, etc.

-fold (有 *repeated* (反覆)之意):—two-fold 二重, manifold 數倍, hundred-fold 百倍.

-ern (有 *direction to* (方向)之意):—east-ern 東方的, north-ern 北方的, etc.

453. Adve.bs 副詞.

-ly (有 *like* (如)之意):—God-ly 如神, miser-ly 鄙吝, bad-ly 惡, on-ly 唯一.

-ling, -long (—wise, ways 方法之意):—head-long 性急, dark-ling 薄暗, side-long 橫斜.

-meal (*division* 分別之意):—limb-meal 片片節節, piecemeal 個個各別.

-ward, wards (有 *turning to* (向於)之意):—for-ward 前方, up-wards 上方, down-wards 下方.

備考:一詞可以“*and*”而造形,形容詞以“*and*”而造形.

-wise (有 *manner mode* (方法)之意):—other-wise 以別法, no-wise 決無, like-wise 亦同.

-way, -ways:—at-ways 常, straight-way 直, 馬路, any-way 不拘何法, no-way 決無.

-s, -ce:—need-s 必要, twi-ce 二次, besid-es 其外, e-i-e 別個, on-ce 一次(領位之符號也).

-n:—*when* 時, *there* 由其時, 由其處, 因其故, *hence* 由此處, 由此時, 以此故.

-om:—*seldom* 稀罕, *whilst* 爨時, 會.

-re:—*where* 其處, *there* 彼處, *here* 此處.

-ther:—*whither* 其處, *thither* 其處, *hither* 此處.

Verbs. 動詞

454. **Frequentative** (表示屢屢起動作之動詞):—

-k:—*talk* 由 *tell* 而成, 講話, *hark* 由 *hear* 聽, *stalk* 由 *steal*, 潛行(捕鳥者之行狀).

-l:—*dig* 穿地, *sparkle* 散火花, *startle* 驚起, *kneel* 跪, *crackle* 爆裂聲, *cackle* 鷄鳴之聲, *wriggle* 搖振.

-er:—*linger* 由 *long* 躊躇, *flitter* 由 *flit* 翱翔, *faunter* 由 *fail* 逡巡.

455. **Causative** (表示使事物起動作之動詞):—

-en:—*fatten* 肥, *shorten* 短, *lengthen* 長, *gladden* 喜, *blacken* 黑.

§ 2 章二. COMPOUND WORDS.

複 辭

456. **Noun Compounds** 複合名詞:—

(1) 形容詞與名詞合成. *blue-bird* 藍色之鐘形草花 *mid-day* 日中 *scarlet-heart* 惡人 *noble-man* 貴人 *quick-sand* 流砂 *mid-night* 中夜.

(2) 名詞或代名詞與名詞合成. *noon-tide* 晝潮 *plough-man* 農夫 *sports-man* 遊獵人 *rail-road* 鐵道 *he-goat* 牡山羊 *pea-hen* 孔雀 *pen-knife* 小刀 *moon-light* 月光

(3) 動詞與名詞合成. *tell-tale* 話家 *dark-devil* 惡魔 *pick-pocket* 攬徒 *break-fast* 早餐 *turn-coat* 背信者 *stop-gap* 充填物 *skin-flint* 慳吝者 *stand-point* 定所, 主義, 目的.

(4) 副詞與動詞合成. *out-turn* 產出額 *on-set* 進擊 *in-come* 所得, 歲入 *off-spring* 子孫, 苗裔 *out-let* 出口 *off-set* 芽, 支脈(山) *out-fit* 準備, 準備金 *out-come* 結果, 成績.

5) 動詞與副詞合成. *keep-sake* 紀念 *break-down* 碎落, 失敗 *stand-still* 停立, 停止 *draw-back* 賄還 *lock-up* 假牢, 拘留所 *set-off* 平等, 對敵 *break-up* 退散.

(6) 副詞與名詞合成. *by-path* 間道 *by-law* 附則 *after-life* 來世, 晚年 *cut-office* 退役 *up-land* 高地 *over-coat* 外套

457. Adjective Compounds 複形容詞:—

(1) 名詞與形容詞合成:—*sky-blue* 如天之蒼, *blood-red* 如血之赤, *foot-sore* 足痛, *ston-blind* 全盲, *sea-green* 如海色之綠, *air-tight* 封密, 空氣不能入的, *penny-wise* 惜小失大的, *ice-cold* 如水之冷.

(2) 形容詞與形容詞合成:—*blue-green* 青綠的, *red-hot* 赤熱的, *ready-made* 現成的, *well-spread* 擴張, *high-born* 高貴之產生, *new-fadd* 新設的, *free-spoken* 自由談話, *full-grown* 十分長成.

458. Verb Compounds 複動詞:—

1) 名詞與動詞合成:—*beat-the* 毆, *bug-day* 埋伏, *hen-peck* 叱鷄司晨即妻制夫, *crow-beat* 威嚇.

(2) 形容詞與動詞合成：—*whit-wash* 白塗料, *rough-hew* 粗切粗削, *safe-guard* 護衛, *rough-shoe* 著釘靴。

(3) 動詞與副詞合成：—*do off* (do 與 off) 脫劍, *do on* (do 與 on) 成。

§ 3 章三. ENGLISH PREFIXES.

英語之添首字

459. **A** (*on in* 之意)：—*a-bed* 在床上, *a-shore* 在岸上, *a-sleep* 睡, *a-way* 去, *a-stir* 活動, 敏捷。

A (*off up from* 之意)：—*a-rise* 興起, *a-wake* 醒, *a-maze* 驚愕, *a-light* 降下, *a-rouse* 起醒, *a-new* 再新, *a-fresh* 新。

Al (*all* 之意)：—*al-one* 單獨, *l-one* 寂寞, 孤獨, *al-most* 幾乎, *al-so* 又, *al-ready* 已經, *al-together* 總共。

at to 之意 *at-one ment* 贖罪

Be (*by*)：(1) 造他動詞之形：—*be-calm* 平定, *be-dew* 灌, 滋潤, *be-friend* 愛, 眷顧, *be-fit* 適用。

(2) 強動詞之勢：—*be-daub* 穢污, *be-smear* 塗, *be-seech* 乞求, *be-get* 產出, *be-stir* 鼓舞, 刺激, *be-sprinkle* 洒, 撒。

(3) 造若干名詞, 副詞及前置詞一部分之形：—*be-half* 便宜, 利益, *be-quest* 遺產, 遺物, *be-low* 低下, *be-neath* 下, *be-sides* 其外, *be-ut* 但, *be-fore* 前, *be-tween* *twain* 二個之中。

For (有 *through* (通) *through* (全通) 之意)：—*for-swear* 誓, *for-get* 忘, *for-bear* 隱忍, 忍耐, *for-sake* 見棄, *for-bid* 禁製。

Fore (有 *before* (前) 之意)：—*fore-cast* 先見, 預謀, *fore-*

tell 預言, 預備, *fore-see* 先見, 預知, *fore-head* 額, *fore-lock* 額髮, *fore-thought* 預考, 預防, *fore-runner* 前驅, 先兆, *fore-stall* 先領.

Forth:—*forth-coming*. 出現, *for-ward* 前方, *forth-with* 即時.

Gain (有 *against* (反抗) 之意):—*gain-say* 抗言 *peak or say against* 之意)

In:—*in-to* 入, *in-sight* 洞察, *in-land* 內地, *in-let* 入口, *in-made* 同居人.

Mis 有 *wrongly* (誤) 之意:—*mis-deed* 失行, *mis-lead* 誘導, *mis-take* 誤, *mis-judge* 誤判斷.

On:—*on-set* 進擊, *on-slaught* 攻擊, 血戰.

Out:—*out-cast* 放逐人, 漂泊人, *out-side* 外部, *out-landish* 外國的 乖異的, *out-look* 注視, 看守, *out-come* 結果, *out-let* 出口, *out-break* 破裂, 爆發, *out-post* 外營, *out-house* 附屬屋, *out-cry* 叫喚.

Out 又能使自動詞爲他動詞:—*out-live* (=live beyond) 餘生, *out-run* (=run ahead of) 走過前, *out-shine* (surpass in brightness) 大照耀, *out-vote* (=defeat by votes) 票數多過, *out-weigh* 重量多過

Over (有 *above beyond* (超過) 之意):—*over-eat* 過食, *over-flow* 溢出, *over-hear* 聞過, *over-coat* 外套, *over-charge* 積過, *over-step* 踰越, *over-awe* 壓服, 威嚇, *over-look* 瞰下, 檢閱.

To (*to, for* 之意):—*to-day* 今日, *to-night* 今夜, *to-gether* 共, *to-ward* 方向 *to-morrow* 明日, *un-to-ward* 預想.

Un (*not* 之意):—*un-truth* 不信寔, *un-real* 不寔確, *un-wise* 不賢, *un-told* 不告, *un-ripe* 不熟.

Un (*back* (返) 之意):—*un-bolt* 開門, *un-tie* 解, *un-lock* 開鎖, *un-twine* 解, 開, *un-do* 廢弛.

Under:—*under-do* 受, *under-stand* 理解, *under-hand* 詐偽, *under-ling* 下人, *under-neath* 下, *under-mine* 以秘密之手段爲破壞, *under-sell* 賤工而賣.

Up:—*up-right* 正直, *up-ward* 上方, *up-on* 在上, *up-lands* 高山, *up-hold* 維持, *up-shot* 結果, 終止.

Well (有 *in good state* (善狀) 之意):—*well-fare* 平安, *welcome* 歡迎.

With (有 *against* (逆) *back* (向後) 之意):—*with-draw* 引去, *with-hold* 抑制, *with-stand* 抵抗.

§ 4 章四. LATIN AND FRENCH SUFFIXES.

拉丁語及法蘭西語添尾字

Nouns. 名詞

460. Agent (動作者):—

-aim, -en, -an:—*Capt-ain* 艦長, 大將, *chieft-ain* 首長, *guardi-an* 保護者, *citiz-en* 公民, *librari-an* 書籍掌管人.

-ee, -y:—*trust-ee* 受托者, 保管人, *devot-ee* 宗教信者, *pay-ee* 受取人, 領收者, *deput-y* 代理, 使節, *jur-y* 審查官, 陪審官.

-eer, -ier:—*engin-eer* 機關士, 土木師, 建築家, *auction-eer* 拍賣人, *volunt-eer* 義勇兵, 志願者, *sold-ier* 兵卒.

-our, -or, -er:—*Savi-our* 救世者, *emper-or* 皇帝, *govern-or* 知事, *preach-er* 說教師, *robb-er* 盜, *act-er* 俳優, *doct-er* 醫士, 博士, *monit-er* 警戒者, *cens-er* 檢查官.

-*trix* (陰性):—*execu-trix* 受托女, *testa-trix* 遺言者, *prosecu-trix* 出訴人, 原告女.

-*ess* (陰性):—*songst-ess* 歌女, *poet-ess* 女詩人, *tigr-ess* 牝虎, *lion-ess* 牝獅.

-*ive*, -*iff*:—*capt-ive* 囚虜, 捕虜, *fugit-ive* 逃走人, *nat-ive* 土人, *plaint-iff* 原告人, *cait-iff* 惡徒.

-*ant*, -*ent*:—*merch-ant* 商人, *serv-ant* 僕, *stud-ent* 學生, *presid-ent* 大統領, 議長, *pati-ent* 病人.

a'e, -*ite*, -*it*:—*candid-ate* 候補者, *advoc-ate* 辯護人, *Israel-ite* 以色列人, *Jesu-it* 猶太派(羅馬教之一派).

451. Abstract Nouns:—

-*age*:—*bond-age* 俘囚, *cour-age* 勇氣, *hom-age* 敬服, 忠義, *marr-iage* 結婚, *pilgrim-age* 巡禮.

-*ance*, -*ence*:—*disturb-ance* 擾亂, 權利之妨害, *endur-ance* 忍耐, *repent-ance* 悔悟, *obedi-ence* 服從, *innoc-ence* 無罪, *abs-ence* 不在, *pres-ence* 出席. 現在.

-*ancy*, -*ency*:—*const-ancy* 永恆, 不變, *brilli-ancy* 光輝, *ten-ancy* 借屋, *excell-ency* 閣下(高位之人之敬稱), *r.g-ency* 攝政官, *urg-ency* 切迫, 緊急, *frequ-ency* 多回. 屢次.

-*ess*, -*ice*, -*ise*:—*serv-ice* 兵役, 勤務, *larg-ess* 贈物, 賞品, *rich-ess* 財貨, *prow-ess* 剛毅, 勇武, *merchand-ise* 商品, 貨物, *just-ice* 正直, 判事.

-*tion*, -*son*, -*son*:—*benedic-tion* 謝神恩, 賜幸福, *beni-son* 謝恩, *por-tion* 部分, 股分, 命運, 相續分, *poi-son* 毒, *redemp-tion* 償還, 贖身, *ran-son* 贖回, *inten-tion* 意志, 目的, *attrac-tion* 引力.

-sion :—*conver-sion* 感化, 改宗, 變遷, *cohe-sion* 粘着, 凝聚力, *occa-sion* 機會, *compul-sion* 強迫, *procc-sion* 處分, 行列, *illu-sion* 幻影, 虛偽, *man-sion* 大廈.

-lence :—*pesti-lence* 流行病, 傳染病, *vio-lence* 暴虐, *virtu-lence* 毒, 惡意, *turbu-lence* 擾亂, 反逆, *opu-lence* 富, 財貨, 豐饒.

-ment :—*conceal-ment* 隱蔽, *enchant-ment* 使魔, 蠱惑, *nourish-ment* 食物, 滋養, *nutri-ment* 滋養品.

-mony :—*cere-mony* 禮節, 儀式, *acri-mony* 苦味, 辛苦, *matri-mony* 結婚, 婚姻, *testi-mony* 證左, 口供.

-our, -or :—*fav-our* 慈惠, 寵愛, *hon-our* 名譽, 體面, 尊敬, *err-or* 誤謬, *langu-or* 衰弱, 失神, *col-our* 色, 顏料, 容貌.

-eur :—*grand-eur* 壯麗, 高大, *liqu-our* 名酒.

-ry, -ery :—*chival-ry* 騎騎黨, 勇士之行爲, *poet-ry* 作詩法, 詩歌, *slav-ery* 奴隸之身, *treach-ery* 反道, 奸計, *cook-ery* 調理, 煎烹法.

-tude :—*longi-tude* 經度, *apti-tude* 天性, 傾向, *alte-tude* 高位, 高處, *multi-tude* 群集.

-ure :—*creat-ure* 天造物, 動物, *verd-ure* 綠色, *meas-ure* 度量, 處置, 手段, 方法, *vest-ure* 衣裳, 禮服, *seiz-ure* 捕獲, 占有, 奪取.

-y :—*harmon-y* 齊整, 平等, 好詞子, *stud-y* 書齋, 勤學, *victor-y* 戰捷, 勝利, *miser-y* 不幸, 災禍, *industri-y* 精勤, 產業.

-ity, -ty :—*fals-ity* 虛偽, *rea-ty* 真實, *cruel-ty* 殘酷, *frail-ty* 薄弱, *beun-ty* 恩惠.

-al, -als:—*refus-al* 拒絕, 不肯, *propo:-al* 建言, 提議, 立案, *tri-al* 審判, 經驗, 糾問, *nupti-als* 婚禮, *creden-ti-als* 委任狀, 證書.

-acy:—*priv-acy* 秘密, *accura-cy* 精察, 細心, *intric-acy* 紛亂, 錯雜, *obstin-acy* 頑固執拗, *intim-acy* 親愛, 戀情.

462. Collectives 集合名詞, Nouns of Place 場所之名詞:—

-ery, -ry:—*machine-ry* 機械, *caval-ry* 騎兵, *jewel-ry* 寶玉, 寶玉商, *station-ery* 文房具, *shrub-ery* 灌木叢林, *bak-ery* 製造麵包所, *cemet-ery* 埋葬地, *spic-ery* 香料貯藏所, *rock-ery* 假山.

-ary:—*libr-ary* 書館, *gran-ary* 倉庫, *semin-ary* 學校, 教育所, *sanctu-ary* 聖堂, 神殿, *gloss-ary* 字典, 音語.

-ory:—*fact-ory* 商館, 製造所, *dermit-ory* 寄宿舍, 墓地, *territ-ory* 地方, 領土, *observat-ory* 氣象臺, 天文臺, *arm-ory* 兵庫, 軍器局.

-age:—*assembi-age* 會, 集合, *plum-age* 羽毛, *foli-age* 枝葉, *vill-age* 村落, 鄉里, *hermit-age* 隱者之住所.

-ade:—*colonn-ade* 一列之柱, *balustr-ade* 欄干, *fusi-ade* 一齊射擊, *ambusc-ade* 伏兵, *cavalc-ade* 騎馬之行列.

463. Diminutive (示細小之名詞):—

-aster:—*poet-aster* 作短詩者, 韻文學者, *ole-aster* 槿似橄欖樹.

-el, -le:—*dams-el* 小女, *cast-le* 城, 棧子, *mod-el* 雛形, 模範, *citad-el* 城壘, *parc-el* 小包, 部分, *merc-el* 小片.

-icle, -cule:—*art-icle* 物品, *part-icle* 分子, 小物, *animal-*

cule 小動物, *curr-icle* 馬車, *curr-culum* 學課程, *cut-icle* 表皮膜, *corpus-cule* 微分子, 小球, *pinna-cle* 尖塔, 高點, 頂上.

-ule: *glob-ule* 小球, *pill-ule* 小丸藥, *mod-ule* 小石, 小節, 小塊.

-et, -let: *lock-et* 小鈕扣, *lanc-et* 放血刀, *pock-et* 衣袋, *brace-let* 手飾, *stream-let* 小流, *brook-let* 小川, *leaf-let* 小葉, *rivu-let* 小河, *ring-let* 小環, 縮毛, *root-let* 細根.

-ot: *fagg-ot* 東薪, *chari-ot* 軍車, *parr-ot* 鸚鵡, *mass-ot* 蠻狂想, *ball-ot* 投票用之毯, *piv-ot* 要點, 樞軸.

-ette: *etiqu-ette* 禮儀, 禮法, *statu-ette* 小影像, *cigar-ette* 細卷煙草, *wagon-ette* 小車.

464. Adjectives 形容詞.

-al: *loy-al* 忠義, *leg-al* 合法, *roy-al* 君王, *reg-al* 國王, *equ-al* 平等, *mort-al* 可死的, *vit-al* 有生氣.

-an, -ane, -ain: *hum-an* 人類, *hum-ane* 仁慈, *mund-ane* 世上, 世界, *cert-ain* 確實, 一定.

-ar: *sol-ar* 太陽, *lun-ar* 太陰, *regul-ar* 正規, *singul-ar* 單一, *vuig-ar* 風俗, 鄙野, *vernacul-ar* 本國, 出生國.

-ant, -ent: *vac-ant* 空虛, *indign-ant* 憤怒, *ramp-ant* 茂盛, *pati-ent* 忍耐, *innoc-ent* 無罪, 潔白, *curr-ent* 流行, *confid-ent* 信, *tru-ent* 懶惰, *vagr-ant* 流浪, 無家.

-ary, -arious: *contr-ary* 反對, *ordin-ary* 普通, *necess-ary* 必要, *temper-ary* 一時, *salt-ary* 俸錢, *ref-er-ary* 極惡, *greg-ari-us* 群鳥, 群行.

-ate: *fortun-ate* 幸運, *separ-ate* 分離, *desol-ate* 荒涼, *priv-ate* 私家, 秘密, *accur-ate* 精確.

-ble, -able: *ta-ble* 堅固, *fee-ble* 弱, *terri-ble* 恐, *mov-able*: 可移動, *laugh-able* 可笑, *eat-able* 可食 (*edi-ble*; *service-able* 能對勞 *lov-able* 可愛, *drink-able* 能飲.

-ese: *Chin-ese* 華人, **Malt-ese* 瑪爾塔人, *Burm-ese* 緬甸人, *Siam-ese* 暹羅人, *Portugu-ese* 葡萄牙人.

-ile: *serv-ile* 卑賤, *frag-ile* 脆, 弱, *doc-ile* 易教, 順良, *puer-ile* 幼少, *dae-ile juven-ile* 年少.

-ael, -il, -le: *gent-eel* 文雅, 良家, *civ-il* 民政, 鄭重, *gent-le* 溫良, *fra-il* 脆, *cru-el* 兇惡, 殘酷, *subi-le* 猾詐.

-ine: *div-ine* 神聖, *infant-ine* 幼稚, *leon-ine* 如獅子, *can-ine* 如犬, *clandest-ine* 秘密.

-ian: *Austral-ian* 澳洲人, *Ind-ian* 印度人, *Cari-t-ian* 耶教人.

-ive: *act-ive* 活潑, *capt-ive* 捕虜, *sport-ive* 好遊戲, *relat-ive* 關係, *nat-ive* 土人, *posit-ive* 確定.

-ose, -ous: *verib-ose* 多言, 贅言, *joc-ose* 滑稽, 可笑, *monsta-ous* 奇怪, 恐, *danger-ous* 危險, *glori-ous* 榮華, 名譽, *ponder-ous* 重, 緊要, *dexter-ous* 巧手, 敏捷, *courte-ous* 禮儀, 鄭重.

-ory -orious: *compuls-ory* 強迫, *transit-ory* 暫時, 頃刻, *curs-ory* 草率, 急速, *dilat-ory* 遲延, 特重, *lab-rious* 辛苦, 勤勞, *cens-orious* 非難, 譏議.

-ble, -ple: *dou-ble* 二重, 二倍, *tre-ble* 三重, 三倍, *sim-ple* 簡單, *tri-ple* 三重, 三倍. *

* 地中海之一島, 一八一四年屬于英武.

-ic, -ique: publi-*ic* 公眾 rust-*ic* 田舍風, un-*ique* 單獨, 無類, cbi-*ique* 不正, 斜, anti-*ique* 古風.

-lent: pesti-*lent* 流行病, 時疫, vio-*lent* 暴烈, turb-*lent* 騷擾, 不穩, fraudu-*lent* 詐僞, 不正.

-fic: terri-*fic* 恐怖, horri-*fic* 同上, beati-*fic* 幸福.

-escent: conval-*escent* 痊癒.

465. Verbs. (動詞)

-ate: agit-*ate* 擾亂, captiv-*ate* 擒虜, moder-*ate* 適度, stimulat-*at* 刺激, cre-*ate* 創造.

-ish: fin-*ish* 完工, nour-*ish* 滋養, pun-*ish* 罰, publi-*ish* 出版, 公佈, van-*ish* 消失.

-fy: magni-*fy* 廓大, signi-*fy* 表示, 意味. simpli-*fy* 簡約, modi-*fy* 變化, 形容, terri-*fy* 驚恐.

-ile, -it: exped-*ite* 急, 差遣, cred-*it* 信, mer-*it* 相當, inhab-*it* 居住.

-esce: efferv-*esce* 沸騰, coal-*esce* 結合, 簇生.

§ 5 章五. GREEK SUFFIXES. 希臘語之添尾字

Nouns.

466. Agent 動作者:—

-ot: patri-*ot* 愛國者, zeal-*ot* 熱心家, 勤勉家.

-ist: dent-*ist* 齒科醫, the-*ist* 信神者, eggot-*ist* 自愛者, 爲我主義之人, alarm-*ist* 警報者, extrem-*ist* 極端論者.

-ast: enthusi-*ast* 空心者, 熱心家, iconoc-*ist* 毀偶像人.

-ic: heret-*ic* 信異教者, 信外道者, scept-*ic* 懷疑者, cleric 書記 (=cleric).

467. Abstract Nouns:—

-ic, -ics:—log-*ic* 論理學, mus-*ic* 音樂, eth-*ic* 倫理學, mathemat-*ics* 數學, polit-*ics* 政治學.

-ism:—patriot-*ism* 愛國心, barbar-*ism* 頑愚, 野蠻, magnet-*ism* 磁氣, the-*ism* 信神教.

-asm:—enthusi-*asm* 熱心, pleon-*asm* 贅言, 冗長, sarc-*asm* 譏辭, 嘲弄, 冷評, 刺語.

-s's, sy, -se:—drop-*sy* 水腫病, pal-*sy* 癱瘓, paraly-*sis* 痲痺, ba-*sis* 基礎, eclips-*se* 日月之蝕, ellip-*se* 省略文.

-y:—monarch-*y* 王國, philoso-*phy* 哲學.

468. Diminutives:—

-isk, -esque:—aster-*isk* 星標(*), obel-*isk* 字標(†), 石碑, 頌德碑, statu-*esque* 好肖像, burl-*esque* 滑稽文, 戲文.

469. Adjectives:—

-ic:—dramat-*ic* 戲曲, cosm-*ic* 全世界, 太陽系, com-*ic* 滑稽戲, trag-*ic* 悲慘劇, polit-*ic* 政略, 政治.

-esque;—arab-*esque* 亞刺比亞風, grot-*esque* 異形, nature-*esque* 如畫, 好景.

470. Verbs.

-ise, -ize:—civil-*ise* 文化, 教化, fertil-*ise* 豐饒, real-*ise* 真寔, theor-*ize* 理論推埋.

§ 6 章六. LATIN AND FRENCH PREFIXES.

拉丁語及法蘭西語之添首言

471. A-, ab-, -abs- (有 *away from* (離遠)之意):—at-*hor* 嫌惡, ab-*use* 濫用, 誤用, ab-*normal* 異常, 遠則, ab-*tract* 抽

象, *abs-ain* 自戒, 節制, *a-vert* 退避, 移遷, *a-void* 避。

Ad (有 *to* (加) 之意): 一因其有同化力, 而 *ad* 更變出 *ac-*, *af-*, *ag-*, *al-*, *an-*, *ap-*, *ar-*, *as-*, *at-*。

ad-vice 規勸, 忠告, *ad-join* 結連, *ad-monish* 勸諫, 教誨, *ad-ore* 崇拜, *ad-here* 粘着, *ad-opt* 採用, 繼嗣。

ac-custom 慣馴, *ac-cept* 受領, 受取, *ac-cede* 同意, 一致, *ac-cent* 剛音, *ac-cuse* 負罪, 歸罪, *ac-quire* 取得。

af-ford 給與, 出產, *af-fix* 附加, 附添物, *af-fection* 愛情, 感情, 嗜好, *af-filiate* 爲養子, *af-fair* 事件, *af-firm* 確定。

ag-grieve 艱苦, 煩腦, *ag-gravate* 增大, *ag-gregate* 聚合, *ag-gressor* 攻擊者。

al-lege 確說, 證明, *al-lot* 分派, *al-lure* 誘惑, *al-low* 許與, *al-lay* 鎮壓, 輕減。

an-nounce 佈告, 報告, *an-nex* 加于尾後, 合併, *an-noy* 煩惱, *an-nul* 無效, 廢除, *an-nihilate* 消滅。

ap-proach 親近, *ap-pear* 現出, *ap-peal* 上控, *ap-point* 任命, *ap-peace* 靜安, 穩, *ap-pal* 恐嚇。

ar-rive 到着, *ar-rears* 後, 遲滯, *ar-rest* 捕拿, *ar-rogant* 驕傲, 自縱, *ar-ray* 整列, *ar range* 排列, 齊整。

as-sent 同意, 承諾, *as-sert* 確言, 固守, *as-sume* 假定, 擔當, *as-certain* 確知, *as-sail* 攻擊, *as-sets* 遺產。

at-tend 注意, 陪侍, *at-tain* 達, 到, *at-tract* 引惹, *at-tach* 依着, *at-tempt* 試, *at-tack* 攻擊。

a-spect 容觀, 光景, *a scribe* 歸到, *a-spire* 渴望(此是脫去 *d*)。

Ante-, anti- (有 *before* 之意): *ant-chamber* 前堂, *ante-*

cedent 先例, 先行者, *anti-cipate* 先知, *ante-date* 以前之日月, *ante-cessor* 先達, 嚮導者, (由是生 *an-cestor* (先祖)一語).

Bene- (有 *well* [善良]之意): *bene-fit* 利益, *bene-volent* 仁慈.

Bi (有 *two* (二個)之意): *bis-*(*twice* (二次)之意), *bi-ped* 二足動物, *bis cut* 乾麵包, *bi-sect* 兩斷, 兩分, *bi-ennial* 二年一回

Circum-, circu- (*around* (周圍)之意): *circum-ference* 周圍, *circu-it* 周行, *circum-stance* 事情, 形勢, *circum-locution* 迂曲, 用迂曲之語法.

com-, con-, co- (*with* (共)之意): 因其有同化力, 而此等字更生生出 *co'*, *cor'*, *coy*.

com-pete 競爭, *com-bat* 戰爭, *com-merce* 貿易, *com-pact* 聯合, 契約, *com-mand* 命令.

con-tend 爭, *con-trive* 工夫, 籌策, *con-flict* 爭鬪, 衝突, *con-cur* 同², 符合, *con-fluence* 合流.

co-alesce 結合, *co-heir* 同嗣子, *co-habit* 同居, 同寢, *co-eternal* 永久, 共存, *co-exist* 共存.

col-lapse 潰壞, *col-lege* 學士會, 專門學校, *col-lect* 集合, *col-league* 同僚, *col-lision* 反抗.

cor-rupt 腐敗, *cor-rect* 改正, *cor-rode* 腐蝕, *cor-respond* 符合, 一致, *cor-roborate* 確證.

cog-nate 同族, 同原, *co-gnizance* 認識.

coun-sel 商議, 勸言, 熟慮, *coun-cil* 公會, 會議, *con-tenance* 容貌, 嘉賞.

contra-, contro-, counter (有 *against* (反對)之意):—

contra-dict 逆, 駁, *counter-act* 逆, 抗拒, *contra-st* 對峙, *contro-versy* 爭論, *counter-feit* 偽, 假冒, *counter-sign* 加印, 暗號, *contra-ry* 反對.

De (*down* (下)之意):—*de-part* 分離, *de-scent* 降, *de-form* 壞狀, *de-ter* 阻止, *de-merit* 過誤, 失德.

Dis-, di-, dif-, dis- (*apart* (分) *not* (無)之意):—*dis-honour* 不名譽, *dis-please* 厭, 嫌, *dis-like* 嫌惡, *di-verse* 種種不一, *di-minish* 減少, *di-gest* 消化, 法律書, *di-ffer* 不同, *di-f-ficult* 困難.

Ex-, e-, ef- (*out of* (外) *from* (由)之意):—*ex-alt* 揚, 陞, *ex-ect* 選舉, *ex-mayor* 前之府尹, *ex-pel* 放逐, *ex-amine* 試驗, 檢查, *e-ducate* 教育, *ef-fort* 盡力, 勤勉, *ef-fulgence* 光輝, 赫耀, *ef-fervesce* 沸騰.

Extra (*beyond* (外) *super* (超)之意):—*extra-ordinary* 非常, *extra-work* 臨時之工事, *stra-nger* 外國人, 不識面人.

In-, en-, em- (*in into on* 之意):—*in-vert* 倒轉, 反裏爲外, *in-vade* 侵入, *in-voke* 賦課, *im-press* 印刷, *il-lusion* 幻影, 欺罔, *en-rich* 富, 殖, *en-tice* 誘惑, *en-dear* 親愛, *em-ploy* 用, *em-brace* 抱, 包括, *em-bark* 乘船, *em-harrass* 擾亂.

In (*not* 之意):—*in-firm* 虛弱, *in-able* 卑賤, *il-legal* 不法, *im-pious* 不信仰, *ir-regular* 不規則, *ir-rational* 不道理, *in-ominy* 聽覺, *il-literate* 無學, *im-passive* 無知覺.

Inter- (*within* (內中)之意):—*inter-course* 交際, *inter-preter* 通譯人, *inter-rupt* 防阻, *inter-pose* 插入, 屏面.

Intro- (*within* 之意):—*intro-duce* 導, 紹介, *intro-spection* 觀內部事, 內省.

Enter- (*within* 之意):—*enter-tain* 款待, *enter-prise* 進取性, 行險事業, *intel-lect* 智力.

Male-, mal- (*ill badly* (惡) 之意):—*male-factor* 惡人, *mal-treat* 虐待, *mal-ignant* 毒心.

Mis- (畧由拉丁之 *minus* 而成):—*mis-chief* 損害, *mis-fortune* 惡運, *mis-conduct* 不品行, *mis-named* 誤稱, *mis-use* 誤用, *mis-calculate* 誤算.

Non (*not* 之意):—*non-sense* 謊謬, 混張, *non-existent* 不成立, *non-age* 未成年者, *non-compliance* 不承諾, 不服.

Ob- (*in front of* (面前) *against* 之意):—*ob-ject* 抗論, *ob-stinate* 頑固, *oc-cupy* 占有, *oc-casion* 機會, *of-fer* 呈出, *of-fend* 怒, 無禮, *op-pose* 反對, *op-press* 抑壓.

Par-, per-, -pil- (有 *through* (通) 之意):—*per-force* 強迫, 無理, *per-spire* 蒸發, *per-form* 為, *par-don* 寬恕, 赦免, *pi-l-lucid* 透明, *pil-grim* 巡禮者.

Post- (*after* 之意):—*post-date* 附于後日, *post-script* 附言, *post-pone* 延遲, *post-humous* 生于親之死後, 遺稿.

Pre- (*before* 之意):—*pre-dict* 豫言, 先知, *pre-caution* 用心, 豫防, *pre-pare* 準備, *pre-juice* 偏執, 私見, *pre-cursor* 前驅者, 先兆.

Pro-, por-, pol-, pur- (*forth* (前) 之意):—*pro-ject* 始計, 投出, *pro-pose* 建議, *pro-noun* 代名詞, *pro-mise* 應允, *por-ten-* 前兆, *por-tute* 污, *pur-pose* 目的, *pur-sue* 追求, *pur-port* 意味.

Re-, red- (*back* (返) *again* (再) 之意):—*re-join* 複合, *re-act* 再作, *re-new* 再新, *re-lem* 回復, 敬出, *re-bound* 反為, *red-*

undant 過多。

Retro- (*backward* (後方)之意):—*retro-spect* 回顧, *retro-grade* 退却, *retro-cession* 付還。

Se-, sed- (*apart* (離) *away* (去)之意):—*se-clude* 隔絕, *separate* 分離, *sed-i-tion* 內亂, *se-cret* 隱遁, 秘密, *se-cure* 安全, *se-cede* 脫離, *se-duce* 誘拐。

Sem-, demi- (*half* (半)之意):—*semi-circle* 半圓, *demi-god* 半神, *demi-official* 半官吏。

Sub- (*under* (下)之):—*sub-ject* 臣民, *sub-ject* 救劫, *success* 成功, *sub-fer* 受苦, *sub-fer* 滿足, *sub-ject* 提議, 諷言, *sub-ject* 屬從, *sub-committee* 副幹事, 小委員, *sub-stant* 支持, *sub-stant* 罷止。

Super-, sur- (*above, over, beyond* (上, 超過)之意):—*super-structure* 建於他物之上之建物, *super-ficial* 表面, 皮相, *super-face* 表面, *sur-pass* 起超。

Subter- (*beneath* (下)之意):—*subter-fuge* 遁辭, 退路。

Trans- (*across* (橫斷)之意):—*trans-formation* 變容, *trans-gress* 背法, *trans-form* 變形, *trans-it* 經過, *trans-mit* 輸送, 傳達, *trans-late* 翻譯, *trans-parent* 透明。

Tra-, tres- (*across* 之意):—*tra-verse* 橫斷, *tres-pass* 侵入, 權利, *tra-dition* 傳說, 交附。

Ultra- (*beyond* 之意):—*ultra-liberal* 過激, *ultra-marine* 海外的。

Vice-, vis- (*instead of* (代)之意):—*vice-regent* 副攝政, *vis-count* 伯爵, *vice-roy* 副王。

§ 7 章七. GREEK PREFIXES.

希臘語之添首字

Amphi (*about* (週), *on both side* (兩方)之意):—*amphi-theatre* 圓形之劇場, *amphi-thious* 水壑兩傍動物

An-, am-, a- (*not without* 之意, 與英語之 *un* 畧同):—*anarchy* 亂世, 無政府, *a-theism* 無神論者, *a-pathy* 無情, *ambrosial* 美味, *a-trophy* 枯槁, 滋養缺乏.

Ana (*up to* (到), *again back* 之意):—*ana-tomy* 解剖, *analogy* 類似, *an-lysis* 分解.

Anti-, ani- (*opposite to* (反對), *against* 之意):—*anti-podes* 住于地球之兩對面之人, *anti-pathy* 反情, 嫌忌, *anti-against* 對敵.

Apo- (*away from* (離), *from* 之意):—*apo-logy* 分疏, 辨解, *apo-state* 背教者, 反心.

Arch-, archi- (*chief* (領袖), *head* (首)之意):—*arch-heretic* 大異教者, *arch-enemy* 大敵, *arch-tect* 建築家.

Auto- (*self* (自己)之意):—*auto-graph* 自筆, 自書, *auto-biography* 自叙, 傳, *auth-entic* 確證.

Cata-, cas- (*down* 之意):—*cata-ract* 大瀑布, *cath-edra* 中央, 寺院, *cata-strophe* 結尾, 災害.

Dia- (*through* 之意):—*dia-meter* 直徑, *dia-logue* 會話, *dia-dem* 大權, 王位, *dia-gram* 圖式, 圖解.

Di- (*two* 二個之意):—*di-syllable* 二併音, *di-phthong* 二重音, *Di-glott*

Dys- (*ill* 之意):—*dys-peptic* 食物之不消化, 胃弱, *dys-*

eatery 赤痢, 痢病.

Ec-, -ex-, (*out, from* 之意):—*ex-odus* 退去, *ec-centric* 偏心, *ec-lipse* 日月之蝕, *ec-stasy* 驚愕, 大說, 奪魂.

En (*in* 之意):—*en-thusiasm* 熱心, *em-phasis* 語勢, *el-lipsis* 省略文.

Eu (*well* 之意):—*eu-phony* 好音調, *eu-phemism* 委婉之文, *eu-angelist* 使徒.

Epi- (*upon* 之意):—*epi-gram* 絕句, 短詩, *ep-och* 時限, *epi-taph* 墓誌, 碑銘, *ep-hemeral* 短命的朝生暮死.

Hemi- (*half* 之意):—*hemi-sphere* 半球.

Hyper- (*above, over, beyond* 之意):—*hyper-critical* 過當之批評, *hyper-bolical* 過實說.

Hypo- (*under* 之意):—*hypo-crite* 偽善者, *hypo-thesis* 憶說, 比喩, *hypo-phen* 連字符 (-).

Meta- (*after, across, change* (變換) 之意):—*meta-pher* 比喩, *meth-od* 方策, *meta-physics* 心理學.

Mono- (*single, alone* (單一) 之意):—*mono-graph* 一時之記錄, *mon-archy* 王國, 立君政治, *mon-astery* 寺院, *mon-k* 僧

Pan- (*all* 之意):—*pan-theist* 萬有神教之信者, *pan-oply* 甲冑, *pan-orama* 全景畫.

Para- (*beside* 之意):—*para-phrase* 註解, 註釋, *para-bl*: 譬喩, *par-allel* 並行線, *para-site* 食客, 寄生之動植物.

Peri- (*around* 之意):—*peri-meter* 周圍, *par-aphrasis* 冗長文, *per-iod* 時, 期, 終, 節, 年代, 結點 (•) 行星回轉之時間.

Poly- (*many* 之意):—*poly-theism* 信多神教者, *poly-glot*

通數國之語者，書藝，*poly-gamy* 多妻，*poly-gon* 多角形，多邊形。

Pro- (*before* 之意)：—*pro-gramme* 告示，略說，*pro-logue* 序，緒言，*pro-phet* 豫言者。

Syn (*with* 之意)：—*syn-thesis* 作文，總合，組織。

Tele (*afar* 遠之意)：—*tele-graph* 電信機，*tele-gram* 電信，*tele-phone* 電話機。

Tri (*thrice or three* 之意)：—*tri-pod* 三足之器具，三腳臺，*tri-syllable* 三併音，*tri-sect* 三分。

Chapter XVI. 第十六編

PUNCTUATION OR THE RIGHT USE OF STOPS.

句點法即點符之正用法

473. 句點法者，用點或點符或記號，而由一文分出他文，或由文之一部分分出他部分也。

474. 依用於此目的之種種點或點符或記號者，其名目甚如左：—

Comma 分切點.....	,
Semicolon 半節點.....	;
Colon 節點.....	:
Full stop or period 段落點.....	.
Inverted Comma 引用符.....	“ ”
Note of Exclamation 感嘆符.....	!

Apostrophe 畧字符.....	'
Note of Interrogation 疑問符.....	?
Dash 橫線.....	—
Brackets 括弧.....	() 或 []
Hyphen 連字符.....	-

The Comma 分切點

475. 分切點者，表最短之停讀 (pause) 也，其在單文中之重要用法如左：—

(a) 同位之名詞或代名詞之間；如：—

Alexander, the son of Philip, king of Macedon.

(亞力山大是菲羅之子又馬其頓之王)

(b) 三個言辭以上之同詞類間，但其最後二辭必有“and”連結之者乃得用之；如：—

Greece, Italy, and Spain are the peninsulas of southern Europe. (名詞與名詞連結)

(希臘 意大利西班牙爲歐洲南部之半島也)

We should live soberly, prudently, and industriously, at all times. (副詞與副詞連結)

(吾人要常生活於著意·謹慎·勤儉)

Early to bed and early to rise.

Make a man healthy, wealthy, and wise, (形容詞與形容詞連結) (早晚早起，能使人健全，富有，賢明)

(c) 稱呼之主位之後；如：—

Friends, Romans, countryman, lend me your ears.

(朋友乎，羅馬人乎，僑余以何等之口氣)

(d) 絕對組織之後；如：—

The sun having set, we all went home.

(日氣沒則我等皆歸)

(e) 同種或同位之名詞聯對而用時，則用分切點以分離其各對；如：—

By night or by day, at home or abroad, asleep or awake,
he is a constant source of anxiety to his father.

(晝或夜，居家或出外，醒或寐，彼之掛慮其父之本心無間斷)

(f) 文首之副詞句之後(但此際可任作者自由捨用)

In fact, his poetry is no better than prose.

(實際上，他的韻文是不能優於其散文)

At last, he has gained his point.

(究竟，他是已達其目的)

(g) 分詞句之前後，但此分詞要可以擴充之為一文，且不僅純用於形容意義時乃可(參照 § 244)：—

Caesar having defeated the Gauls, led his army into
Britain.

(此文之“having defeated”即 after he had defeated
之意) 該敵最富魯人(今之 France 國)後乃導其軍入不列國)

Convinced of the accuracy of his facts, he struck to his
opinion. (此文之“convinced”即 because he was
convinced 之意) (彼確信其事之正確，故固守其說)

但分詞為形容名詞之作用，而恰如形容詞純然為限制其名詞之意義時，則分切點又不宜用：—

A dog lying asleep on a public road is likely to be run
over. (睡臥於大道之犬當被踏也)

A man convinced against his will is of the same opinion

still. (其人被駁以逆其意志後，尚依然主持前說)

(h) 或同位接續詞之前：—

He is not a madman, *but* a knave.

(彼非狂漢，但惡漢耳)

He is not only accused, *but* also convicted.

(彼是不僅被告發，且判決為有罪)

He hoped, *then*, that he would be pardoned.

(彼人希望此時赦宥)

(i) 說明句 (Explanatory phrase) 宜用分切點以分之：—

The field was oblong, 60¹ yards in length, 40 in breadth.

(此方長形之田，其長寬六十碼，廣幅四十碼)

(j) 動名詞的無定法，用於說明或插註之意義之前後：—

I am, to tell you the truth, thoroughly sick of work.

(真寔告汝，余全厭此工事矣)

To sum up, the man was convicted of three charges.

(總計之，其人被判決為犯罪三款)

(k) 分切點有時用為導入引用直接說話法文，但其所引用之文，其首一字須寫大書：—

What I say unto you I say unto all, watch:— *New Testament*. (余何所言于汝，余是言于諸人，即曰注意)

(l) 分切點有時插入以示動詞之省略，而免其反覆：—

My regiment is bound for India; yours,² for Gibraltar.

(余之軍隊向于印度，汝的向于直布羅他地在西班牙南角之海角)

² Yours, for Gibraltar = your regiment is bound for Gibraltar.

1. 60 yards in length 與 40 yards in breadth 二句，皆為說明句，故用分切點以分之。

476. 複文之同位節 (Co-ordinate clauses), 若其所言太冗長時, 通常用分切點以分之:—

His vanity is greater than his ignorance, and what he lacks in knowledge is supplied by imprudence.

(彼人之驕傲更甚于其無學, 且缺於智識而更添以鹵莽)

但兩文不甚冗長而極密接時, 可以不用之:—

I made haste and caught him.

(余急去捕他)

I took up a stone and threw it at the mad dog.

(余拾一石以投向瘋犬)

477. 接續詞省略于同位節之間, 此是必須用分切點或半節點以分之:—

(a) 若為短體之組織宜用分切點:—

Steam propels, elevates, lowers, pumps, drains, pulls; drives,.....

(蒸氣者, 推進舟車, 揚物, 卸物, 抽水, 放水, 引物, 與物等)

(b) 若為長體之組織, 宜用半節點以分之:—

Between fame and true honour there is much difference the former is blind applause; the latter is an internal and more silent homage.

(名聲與其榮譽之間甚有區別; 前者為無目之讚賞; 後者為默而獻與于中心也)

478. 於混文中而用分切點時, 要注意左之規則:—

(a) 名詞節是不用分切點以分其主節:—

It is generally allowed that the art of teaching is difficult.

(教授術之困難是人所共認也)

No one knows when he will come.

(不論何人不知彼來之時)

His being pardoned depends upon whether he will confess his fault or not.

(彼人欲得赦宥者，在其自白其過與否耳)

但數個名詞節中，其主辭或賓主爲對待同一之動詞時，則須用分切點以互分其各節：—

No one knows ¹when he will come, or whether he will come at all, or whether he is even alive.

(彼何時可來，或彼全來，或彼尙生是無人知之)

Who he was, or why he came, or what he intends to do, will all be found out in time.

(彼是往，或彼何故而來或彼欲爲何事，皆終歸顯露)

(b) 形容詞節若非長體組織者，則不用分切點以分其主節：—

The man *wh*o saw yesterday has come again to-day.

(我等昨日所見之人今日復來)

Fortune selects him for her lord, *wh*o reflects before acting

(幸運者選擇事前而熟慮者以爲君也)

(c) 副詞節是常時(或幾乎全是)用分切點以分其主節：—

He will succeed, because he works hard.

(彼將成功，因其勤工也)

I will gladly do this, if I am allowed.

(余若應允，余將喜爲此)

1. When he will come 與 whether he will come at all 與 whether he is even alive, 皆爲名詞節，而對於 knows 之動詞爲賓辭。

2. Who he was 與 why he came 與 what he intends to do 三節，皆爲名詞節，而對於 will be found 之動詞爲主辭。

Where your treasure is there, will your heart be also.

(汝之貨財所在之處，汝之心亦在也)

副詞節若非爲短體之組織，或與其主節極其密接時，則不可省略分切點：—

He likes you better than me.

(他愛汝過于愛余)

Send me word before you start.

(出發之前請寄一言于我)

試於下文所必要分切點之處而插入之：—

1. The triple alliance consists of Germany Austria and Italy. 2. My son so far from being blamed for his conduct was commended and even rewarded. 3. The roof of the house having caught fire the inmate fled and remained outside the house until the fire was put out. 4. Towns villages and hamlets were all alike attacked with the epidemic of cholera. 5. I shall be happy to make the attempt that you speak of if I am permitted. 6. From morning till noon from noon to evening from evening to midnight this same grief never leaves him. 7. Early this morning when we had just left the house we met the man that we had been looking for. 8. He found as I expected he would that the house he had lately purchased was a bad one. 9. What was the cause of so much grief to him was never known to any of us. 10. I hope my friend that you will come and spends at least a week with us. 11. He has now grown so old that he spends most of his time in sleeping taking his food or sitting in an easy-chair. 12. I remain my dear sir yours faithfully

William Mathews. 13. I shall not leave home for business unless you set the example. 14. Example as the proverb says is the sincerest form of precept. 15. To tell you the plain truth I should be glad to retire from business altogether considering that I am now past sixty years of age and have a son to succeed me. 16. The boatman shouted to a man on shore throw out the rope. 17. A snake sleeping in the grass will bite if any one treads upon it. 18. The prisoner having been convicted of the crime of which he was accused must make up his mind to suffer the penalty. 19. The building is a noble structure of red brick and comprises a reading room a library a room for writing letters and a room for refreshments. 20. It is quite true that this fine building was erected by private subscriptions. 21. In fact of all that was subscribed L. gave the largest amount in cash but M. was not less liberal because he gave the land on which the building was erected. 22. A dog barking at nothing is a nuisance. 23. Men women and children were all hard at work trying to keep the water from inundating the house. 24. His being selected for the vacant post depends on whether he has done anything to deserve it. 25. Neighbours fellow-countrymen and fellow-citizens it behoves us to use all efforts to avert this calamity. 26. What he lacks in quickness is supplied by industry. 27. Our men to add to their troubles lost their way in the dark. 28. The guide who was sent to meet them was not only a fool but a knave. 29. We hope however they will reach home before midnight.

答 案 及 譯 解

1. The triple alliance consists of Germany, Austria, and Italy.

三國同盟者，由德意志，奧太利，伊太利而成也。

2. My son, so far from being blamed for his conduct, was commended and even rewarded.

吾子受獎賞因其行為無可責備也。

3. The roof of the house having caught fire, the inmates fled, and remained outside, the house until the fire was put out.

屋蓋燃着後，居人逃出留於屋外，以待火之消滅。

4. Towns, villages, and hamlets, were all attacked with the epidemic of cholera. 都會也，大村也，小村也，皆被虎列刺(霍亂)流行病所襲。

5. I shall be happy to make the attempt that you speak of, if I am permitted. 余若應允，則將照汝所言者而一試之。

6. From morning till noon, from noon to evening, from evening to mid night, this same grief never leaves him.

由朝至正午，由正午至夕，由夕至夜半，此一憂愁不稍離于彼。

7. Early this morning, when he had just left the house, we met the man that we had been looking for.

今朝早我等纔出門，就遇着我等所訪過之人。

8. He found, as I expected he would that the house, he had lately purchased was a bad one.

彼于此頃購入之房屋，果如余所預料。

9. What was the cause of so much grief to him, was never known to any of us. 彼之何故如此其憂愁者，我等皆不知之。

10. I hope, my friend, that you will come, and spend at least a week with us. 吾友，余望君來與我等共居數一禮拜亦可。

11. He has now grown so old, that he spends most of his time in sleeping, taking his food, or sitting in an easy chair.

彼今如此其老，其費光陰，於寢食坐臥間不少矣。

12. I remain my dear sir yours faithfully William Matthews.

此是信札之結尾套話，其通例之寫法如左：—

I remain my dear sir.

Yours faithfully.

William Matthew. (人名)

13. I shall not leave home, for business, unless you set the example.
汝不先示其例，余將不離家而去理其事。
14. Example, as the proverb says, is the sincerest form of precept.
如諺所云，實例者，最誠實之教訓法也。
15. To tell you the plain truth, I should be glad to retire from business altogether, considering that I am now past sixty years of age and have a son to succeed me.

余明以告汝，余今自思已過六十齡矣，且有一子以繼吾後，故余亦可以欣然盡置業務于度外而退隱。

16. The boatman shouted to a man on shore, "Throw out the rope."
舟人岸上之人叫曰，「投纜來！」
17. A snake sleeping in grass will bite, if any one tread upon it.
眠于草中之蛇，人若踏之則咬。
18. The prisoner, having been convicted of the crime, which he was accused, must make up his mind* to suffer the penalty.
囚人既被判決其所被告之罪科為有罪後，則要甘心受罰金之刑。
19. The building is a noble structure of red brick, and comprises a reading-room, a library, a room for writing letter, and a room for refreshment.
建築物之高尚者，宜造之以紅磚，且備有讀書室，圖書室，寫書室，飲食室。
20. It is quite true, that this fine building was erected by private subscriptions.
- 此華麗之建築物者，實藉私人之義捐而建造也。
21. In fact, of all that was subscribed L. gave the largest amount in cash,

* Make up one's mind 決心。

but M. was not less liberal, because he gave the land on which the building was erected.

L 氏一切之捐金，寔是最大額之現金，但 M 氏亦不劣，蓋其捐出彼建築物所建築之地也。

22. A dog barking at nothing is a nuisance.

犬之無故而吠，實覺討厭。

23. Men, women, and children were all hard at work trying to keep the water from inundating the house.

男子也，婦女也，童子也，皆盡力以防水之氾濫入屋。

24. His being selected for the vacant post depends on whether he has any thing to deserve it.

其所選之虛位而期得之者，依其能成就諸事與否爲決。

25. Neighbours, fellow-countrymen, and fellow-citizens it behoves us to use all efforts to avert this calamity.

隣人乎，同胞國人乎，同胞市民乎，我等應當盡力以避此災難也。

behave = behoove.

26. What he lacks in quickness is supplied by industry.

其才缺于靈敏處，則以勤勉而補之。

27. Our men, to add to their troubles, lost their way in the dark.

吾人在黑暗處而失其道時，則加一層之困難。

28. The guide, who was sent to meet them, was not only a fool, but a knave.

其所遣迎接彼等之引導者，不第是愚笨，蓋惡漢也。

29. We hope, however, they will reach home before midnight.

雖然，我等望彼等于夜半之前到家。

The Semicolon ; 半節點

479. 半節點者，用之表文章之停頓處，比分切點所示爲更廣

半節點之重要用法如左：一

(a) 凡欲分冗長之節，使各文免於混雜時，則此法在所必要。

Honesty of purpose in worldly affairs has many advantages over deceit; it is a safer way of dealing with men; it is an easier mode of despatching business; it invites men with greater confidence; it acquires more and more confidence in itself; while deceit becomes more and more difficult

(處世事而以忠直爲主其勝于用欺詐者，有極多之利益；蓋忠直者與人交際，安之道也；事之捷徑也；博人之大信用也；反之欺詐則愈招人之疑忌。

(b) 強各節以一層之語勢，如是使讀者于讀各節時，順次以注意於稍長之一節。

As Cæsar loved me, I weep for him; as he was fortunate, I rejoice at it; as he was valiant, I honour him; but as he ambitious, I slew him. So there is tears for his love; joy for his fortunate; honour for his valour; death for his ambition
—*Shakespeare*.

(讀彼其愛我也，余爲其泣；其幸運也，余其喜之；勇且也，余敬之；然彼其欲抱野心，則吾殺之矣。是故，對於彼之愛我以淚；對於彼之幸運而以喜；對於彼之勇且而以敬；對於彼之野心而以死)

(c) 分離由選擇接續詞或推斷接續詞所連結諸節。(此是欲使讀者之心，了解其所選擇或推斷，故稍長之節，必用半節點而使其稍爲停頓)

I met him as he was leaving his house; *otherwise* I should not have known where he lived.

(彼係由某處出來時我與余相遇；不然，余將不知其居於何處矣)

I refused to do what he asked me to do; *for* I was convinced that he had been misinformed of the facts.

(余不允彼人請我所爲之事；蓋余信得彼之誤報其事寔也)

The Colon : 節點

439. 作者於記一停讀時，而覺用半節點未得十分明白，則可依自己之自由判斷而用節點，但關於自由判斷之範圍，此是不能下一定之規則。

節點之重要明法如左：—

(a) 導入說明中附加之說或更確之言：—

Strive above all things, in whatever station of life you may be to preserve health: there is no happiness in life without it.

(汝無論在於如何生活之地位，一要保持健康時，則爭擲萬事而不恤。誠以人無健康，則生活上亦無幸福也)

(b) 導入引用文(a quotation). 在此用法，普通附以橫線于節點之次：—

Then Peter stood forth and said:—Of a truth perceive that God is respecter of persons, etc.

(于是彼得立前而言曰：我誠悟神是無偏于人者也)

(c) 爲總收蓄以前連續之數節，在此用法，亦附以橫線于節點之次：—

The storm had passed; the sun was shining on the green leaves of the trees; the streams were dancing around the rocks; the birds hopped about him, as they chirped their

cheerful notes:—such were the pleasant scenes and sound that welcomed the wanderer back to his home.

(晴嵐既過；日光輝映于樹上之綠葉；流水舞蹈于岩石之周圍；禽鳥跳躍于彼人之上下而尋其愉快之歌曲；如此可人聲景，實是迎行吟者之歸其家矣)

(d) 爲導入連續之數節。在此用法，亦附以橫線于節點之次：—

You must now hear what I have to say about the uses of iron:—We sleep on iron; we travel on iron; we float on iron; we plough the fields with iron; we shoot with iron; we chop down trees with iron;—in fact, there is scarcely anything that we can do without the help of this wonderful metal.

(汝今不可不傾聽余所欲論及鐵之效用；蓋吾人睡眠于鐵上；旅行于鐵上；乘浮于鐵上；以鐵而耕田；以鐵而射擊；以鐵而倒樹；實無一事物而不藉此極金屬之助也)

(e) 導入若干規則之例證。在此用法，亦附以橫線于節點之次：—

The Indefinite article has sometimes the force of Numeral adjective, signifying *one*:—as, “A stitch in time saves nine.”

(無定冠詞有時有數形容詞“one”字之意味；如：“遺時之一縫，可省九縫”)

試依下文所必要之分切點節點或半節點處而插入之：—

I. According to Hindu notions if a sick man sneezes it is a sure sign of recovery but when one is going out on a journey or about to commence some business should any one about him sneeze the sneeze indicates that the object in which he is

interested will not be accomplished.

2. In Rome the army was the nation no citizen could take office unless he had served in ten campaigns.

3. The drill was unremitting at all times so long as a man continued to be a soldier when the troops were in winter quarters sheds were erected in which the soldiers fenced with swords buttoned at the points or hurled javelins also buttoned at the points at one another.

4. The Carthaginian army was composed entirely of mercenary troops Africa Spain and Gaul were their recruiting grounds and these countries were an inexhaustible treasury of warriors as long as the money lasted which the recruits received as pays.

5. While I was still wondering at my sudden deliverance a man came suddenly forward and said my good sir there is nothing to be surprised at I was sent here to find you and rescue you from these robbers well I have succeeded in finding you and so I have accomplished what I was sent for as you now see.

6. Whenever you hesitate about beginning to do something which must be eventually done remember the maxim a thing begun is half done.

答案及译解

1. According to Hindu notions, if a sick man sneezes, it is a sure sign of recovery but when one is going out on a journey or about to commence some

business, should any one about him sneeze, the sneeze indicates that the object, in which he is interested will not be accomplished.

照印度人之觀念，若病人噴嚏，是爲病痊之吉兆；但人之將旅行或起首爲某事時，而亦噴嚏，但此噴嚏是兆其人斯企劃之目的不成就也。

2. In Rome the army was the nation: no citizens could take office unless he had served in ten campaigns.

羅馬之軍隊是國民軍也。然雖以一公民，苟非從事于十回之戰勝，則不得就官職。

3. The drill was unremitting at all times, so long as a man continued to be a soldier: when the troops were in winter quarters, sheds were erected, in which the soldiers fenced with sword's points at one another.

人之爲兵士時本無間斷其訓練：其軍隊在冬陣時，建造棚屋，在內之兵士以劍互扣劍其尖端而爲擊劍，或投鏢槍時，亦互扣劍其尖端。

4. The Cathaginian army was composed entirely of mercenary troops: Africa, Spain, and Gaul were their recruiting grounds, and these countries were an inexhaustible treasury of warriors, as long as the money lasted, which the recruit received as pay.

迦密達人之軍隊，悉由傭兵成立：阿非利加，西班牙，及高魯是其募集軍兵之地也，此等國：迭以募兵金，而兵士之貨財于是無窮。

5. While I was still wondering at my sudden deliverance, a man came suddenly forward and said:—"My good sir, there is nothing to be surprised at I was sent here to find you and rescue you from these robbers: well, I have succeeded in finding you, and so I have accomplished what I was sent for, as you now see.

余尚躊躇于突來救吾之人時，而已俄然一人蓬頭而前矣；渠曰：君勿驚駭，余是遺來此處尋汝，且由此等賊徒救出汝之人也；幸哉，余尋汝之事亦遂，且余所受派遣之使命，亦現亦且其告厥成功矣。

6. Whenever you hesitate about beginning to do some thing which must be eventually done, remember the maxim— a thing begun is half done.

凡有躊躇於始其事時，宜憶「事一開即半成」之格言。

The Full Stop or Period 完結點

481. 完結點者，表完全文之總結者也。至於其次文之起端必用頭文字。

完結點又用於省略語之後；如：—

A. D. (Anno Domini 之略語) (紀元)

B. L. (Bachelor of Law) (法學得業生)

the Hon. (the Honourable) (敬稱)

Bar. (Baronet.)*

Inverted Commas. “ ” 引用符

482. 引用符者，用於引用文之始終，或言者自用其原說之始終也；如：—

The councillors stood up, and with one voice exclaimed:—

“Death before dishonour.”

(議員起立而大聲叫曰：「先于恥辱而死！」)

“Wine is a mocker,” said the wise king.

(賢王曰：「酒者嘲弄者也。」)

Campbell was the author of the following stanza:—

“The more we live, more brief appear

Our life's succeeding stages:

A week to childhood seems a year,

A year like passing ages.”

* 英國之從男爵即在 Baron 男爵 之後，而爵號之 Knight 者也。有此爵者在稱呼 Sir 之前。

Campbell 是左詩之作者也：—

“命愈長覺人事之過眼愈速，
但在幼年時代則反厭歲月之長”）

Not of Exclamation ! 感嘆符

483. 感嘆符者，用於表精神感動之文或言辭之後。

How are the mighty fallen in the midst of the battle!

I am distressed for thee, my brother Jonathan!

（嗚呼，偉人殲于酣戰中矣，吾兄弟約拿得乎，余誠悼汝也）

Nonsense! How can you talk such rubbish?

（胡說，汝安能言此瑣屑之事哉）

What a conceited fellow you are! Be silent.

（汝是何等之自負漢乎，請緘默也可）

“Land ahead!” Shouted the delighted crew.

（歡喜之水手叫曰：「前面大陸」）

The Apostrophe ' 畧字符

484. 畧字符者，用爲表記所省畧一個或數個之文字也：—

The Hon'ble (Honourable 之略).

e'en (even 之略).

'tis (it is 之略).

ta'en (taken 之略).

don't (do not 之略).

shan't (shall not 之略).

won't (will not 之略).

tho' (though 之意).

an ox's head (oxes head 之略).

且可以用於領位一切之例.

Note of Interrogative ? 疑問符

485 疑問符者，用於疑問文之後，至於其次文之起端亦用頭文字。

Where was he born?

(他是于何處出世)

When did he die?

(他何時死)

試依下文而插適當之完結點及頭文字。

1. What while the matter Thomas it that old pain of yours again no its no' that at all said he but something a good deal better would you believe it my poor old uncie is dead and he has left me five thousand pounds that was very good of him she replied 'but its come too late why he inquired because she answered you are now old and broken in health what a pity it is that he did not die twenty years ago or give you the money while he was still a live.

3. I have always considered you a very sensible man said the pleader I shall take one of your oxen in return for the one that has been killed and I believe you will consider that to be just it is no more than what is right replied the farmer but what was I saying dear me I have made a blunder it was not my bull that gored your ox but your bull that gored mine so you must give me an ox in return for the one that has been killed oh thats another matter said the pleader I

will inquire about the matter and if I find that what you say is correct then we must come to some equitable settlement.

答案及譯解

1. "What's the matter, Thomas? Is't that old pains of yours again?" "No; it's not that at all," but something a good deal better. Would you believe it? My poor old uncle is dead, and he has left me five thousand pounds." "That was very good of him." She replied, "but its come too late." "Why?" he inquired, "Because," she answered, "you are now old and broken in health. What a pity it is, that he did not die twenty years ago, or give you the money while still alive!"

何事乎，多瑪，汝之舊痛又發乎。多瑪對曰：“否；不盡為然。”但有一好事耳，汝肯信之乎，余之老叔父已死，遺下五千磅金于我。彼女答曰：“如此他是甚好”但是太晚耳，彼問曰：“何故？”彼女答曰：汝今已老且損了康健，他不死於廿年前，或于尚在存時而與此金于汝，是則有何所憐於汝乎。”

2. "I have always considered you a very sensible man," said the pleader; "I shall take one of your oxen in return for the one that has been killed, and I believe you will consider that to be just." "It is no more than what is right," replied the farmer; "but what was I saying? Dear me, I have made a blunder. It was not my bull that gored your ox, but your bull that gored mine: so you must give me an ox in return for the one that has been killed." "Oh! that's another matter," said the pleader; "I will inquire about the matter; and if I find that what you say is correct then we must come to some equitable settlement."

狀師言曰：“余常以爲汝是一甚明白人，余將取汝一牛，以償被殺之牛矣，想汝亦以此爲正當也。農夫答曰：汝之言正無有不是，雖然，余何言哉，余所言誤矣，豈非余之牛而殺汝之牛，乃汝之牛而害吾牛乎，如是汝須與我一牛以償被殺之牛也。狀師答曰：呼，此是實於何項事件，余將研窮其事，若見出汝之言爲不誤然後我等爲公平了結可也。

Dashes — 橫線

486. 橫線之重要用法有四：—

(a) 示文中之破隙或急轉：—

Here lies the great—false marble where?

Nothing but sordid dust lies here.

(在此處之偉人——假石碑在於何處乎，惟存積累耳)

(b) 示同位或說明語：—

They plucked the seated hills with all their loads—

Rocks, waters, woods—and by the shaggy tops.

Uplifting bore them in their hands.

(彼載岩石流水木而拔鎮重之邱陵，舉粗鬆之巖而提之於手)

(c) 導入引用文之首節或末節，但在此用法，其橫線之前必為節點所先立(參照 § 480).

(d) 插入夾註之句或文於主文之中間。在此用法，必要用兩條橫線。

At the age of ten—such is the power of genius—he could read Greek with facility.

(十齡之時——如此天稟之讀書力——彼能讀希臘文而無疑也)

Bracket () [] 括弧

487. 括弧之用法，適與前 (d) 例所言之雙橫線同其理，亦為插入夾註的文於主文之中間。

At the age of ten (such is the power of genius) he could read Greek with facility.

The Hyphen — 連字符

483. 連字符者，用為連結複辭之部分也：如：—

Bathing-place (浴場)

備考：—連字符亦如橫線而作水平線狀，但此橫線較短。

試依下文所必要橫線，連字符，括弧處而插入之，並附以其他適當之句點：—

1. England and Russia the two greatest empires on the face of the earth have no real cause of enmity. 2. I could tell you all about my but perhaps you have heard enough by this time. 3. My dog such is the power of jealousy attacked its rival whenever they met. 4. This is very unhill work. 5. If you read without spectacles and I believe you can be so good as to read out the contents of this letter. 6. When I took my degree it was twelve years ago I had good prospects before me. 7. I will never but I need not finish my sentence for you know already what I was going to say.

答案及譯解

1. England and Russia,—the two greatest empire on the face of the earth have no real cause of enmity.

地球面上最大二帝國之英俄兩國，已無真實互相憎視之問題。

2. I could tell you all about my—but perhaps you have heard enough by this time.

余能告以吾……但恐汝今已聞足事。

3. My dog, such is the power of jealousy, attacked its rival, whenever they

met. 余之犬(如此嫉忌心之力)與其競爭者相遇,則咬擊之。

4. This is very up-hill work.

此是極艱難之工事。

5. If you read without spectacles,—and I believe you can,—be so good as to read out the contents of this letter.

若汝不要眼鏡而讀——余信得汝能——能讀出此信內容之事實,便算能事。

6. When I took my degree (it was twelve years ago) I had good prospects before me. 余受吾學位時(是二十年前事,余于前途有好希望也。

7. I will never—but I need not finish my sentence; for you know already what I was going to say.

余總不……但余欲終吾說;因余之所擬言者汝已知之矣。

APPENDIX 附錄 A.

THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

動詞之變化

1. 變化動詞云者，是示動詞主要部分之變化也。

備考。——“Conjugation”一語，就廣義上解釋之，凡示語氣，法，時，數及入稱之語尾變化，及結合語一切之形成者，皆包含之。

2. 英語中動詞之主要部分者，現在時，過去時，及過去分詞是也。其他之部分如原動語氣與被動語氣亦可以極穩妥由此三者以造形。

3. 變化有二大種類：一

第一種。強變化即舊變化(此種動詞現時比於以前其數少)，是為變換現在時形之中心母音而造過去時之形；如 *rise, rose.*

第二種。弱變化即新變化(此種動詞現今比於強變化其數多)為附加 *ed* 或 *t* 於現在時之語尾，而不必變換其中心之母音以成過去時之形；如 *love, loved.*

註。一當附加 *ed* 於動詞時，其字尾已有 *e* 時，務必削去 *ed* 之 *e* 而僅用 *d*；例如 *lov+ed* 而讀為 *loved* 則誤之甚矣。故書作 *loved* 乃合。

除以上二種之外，尚有第三種之變化。此則強弱參半，故可名之為混合變化。

註。一文法家有區別動詞為正則動詞 (Regular) 變則動詞 (Irregular) 者。其以正則當弱變化，變則當強變化。此正則變則之名極易誤讀者，何則，蓋自事實上言之，弱變化之起源更古，故當認其為更加正則也。

I. *The Strong or Older Conjugation.*

強變化即舊變化

4. 強變化動詞爲變化其中間之母音，其性質頗繁雜，不能以單純之規則可以整齊之。

其最普通之方法有二：一

(1) 變化中間之母音以成過去時之形。

(2) 附加 *en, n* 或 *ne* 以成過去分詞之形。

5. 往昔強變化之動詞，雖有加 *en, n, ne* 以成過去分詞之形者，但現今已大多數脫漏此等添尾字矣 (*en, n, ne*)。

故現今強變化動詞之尚存立者，遂變遷爲兩大類；如：

第一類。於過去分詞尚留存 *en, n, ne* 者。

第二類。於過去分詞尚存 *en, n, ne* 者。

Group I. (第一類)

<i>Present Tense.</i> (現在時)	<i>Past Tense.</i> (過去時)	<i>Past Participle.</i> (過去分詞)
Arise 起	arose	arisen
Bear (produce) 生, 產	bore	born
Bear: carry 運, 負	bore	borne
Beget 生, 得	beget, begat	begotten, begot
Bid 命令	bade, bid	bedden, bid
Bite 咬	bit	bitten, bit
Bind 綁, 縛	bound	*bounden, bound
Blow 吹	blew	blown
Break 破	broke	broken
Child 兒, 孩, 時	child	children, child
Choose 選	chose	chosen
Cleave (split) 劈	cleve, cleft	*cloven, cleft

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
(現在時)	(過去時)	(過去分詞)
Crow 鳴, 誇	crew, crowed	crowed, rare'y, crowen
Draw 畫, 引	drew	drawn
Drink 飲	drank	*drunken, drunk
Drive 駕, 驅	drove, drave	driven
Eat 食	ate	eaten
Fall 落, 倒	fell	fallen
Fly 飛	flew	flown
Forbear 忍耐, 禁	forbore	forborne
Forget 忘	forgot	f.r.gotten
Forsake 見棄	forsook	forsaken
Freeze 冰	froze	frozen
Get 得	got	*gotten got
Give 與	gave	given
Go, wend 行	went	gone
Grow 長成	grew	grown
Hide 匿	hid	hidden, hid
Know 知	knew	known
Lie 代, 橫, 眠	lay	lain
Ride 乘	rode	ridden
Rise 起	rode	ridden
See 見	saw	seen
Shake 震, 搖	shook	shaken
Shrink 縮, 避	shrank	*shrunken, shrunk
Sink 沈	sank	*sunken, sunk
Slay 殺	slew	slain
Slide 滑	slid	slidden, slid
Smite 打	smote	smitten, smit
Speak 言	spoke	spoken

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
(現在時)	(過去時)	(過去分詞)
Steal 竊	stole	stolen
Stride 跨 闊步	strode	stridden
Strike 擊	struck	*stricken, struck
Strive 競	struve	striven
Swear 誓	swore	sworn
Take 取	took	taken
Tear 裂 割	tore	torn
Thrive 繁榮	throve, thrived	thriven, thrived
Throw 投	threw	thrown
Tread 行, 步	trod	trodden, trod
Wear 穿, 著	wore	worn
Weave 織, 織	wove	woven
Write 書	wrote	written

備考：一上表中有 (* 符號之七個分詞現今極重要獨用於動詞狀形容詞而非用於時之部分：一

<i>Verbal Adjective.</i>	<i>Part of some Tense.</i>
Our <i>burden</i> duty. (吾輩責任之義務)	He was <i>bound</i> by his promise. (他被其契約所束縛)
A <i>drunken</i> man. (一醉漢)	He had <i>drunk</i> much wine. (他已飲過多量之酒)
A <i>sunken</i> ship. (一沈船)	The ship had <i>sunk</i> under the water. (船已沈於水底)
A <i>stricken</i> deer. (一殺斃鹿)	The deer was <i>struck</i> with an arrow. (鹿已發一矢所射)
The <i>thriven</i> stream. (一漲流)	The stream has <i>thrived</i> in its bed. (溪流已漲至底)
Ill- <i>gotten</i> wealth. (不義財)	He has <i>got</i> wealth by ill means. (他以劣手段而致富)

A cleftn hoot.

(一裂斷)

The tree was cleft by lightning.

(樹被電所裂)

Group II.

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Abide 住, 待, 忍	abode	abode
Awake 起, 鼓舞	awoke	awoke
Become 成	became	become
Begin 始	began	begun
Behold 顧	beheld	beheld, behelden*
Cling 攀附	clung	clung
Come 來	came	come
Dig 掘	dug	dug
Fight 戰	fought	faught
Find 找出	found	found
Fling 擲, 投	flung	flung
Grind 研, 磨	ground	ground
Hang 掛, 絞	hung, hanged	hung, hanged
Hold 保, 持	held	held
Ring 鳴, 鈴	rang	rung
Run 流, 走	ran	run
Shine 照	shone	shone
Sing 歌	sang	sung
Sit 坐	sat	sat
Sling 拋, 投	slung	slung

* Beholden 爲 indebted 負義務之意。

† Hung 餘自動詞他動詞兩種, 其自動詞之時僅在弱變化之形中變化, 他動詞之時則兼強弱兩變化之形。Hanged (弱變化之形) “處決”之意如 The dog was hanged 犬被絞殺。

Hung (強變化之形) 用於廣義, 如 He hung up his coat (他掛起其外套)。

Sink 滯, 送	sunk	sunk
Spin 紡	spun	spun
Spring 跳, 生	sprang, sprung	sprung
Stand 立	stood	stood
Stave 貫, 穿	stove, staved	stove, staved
Stick 粘附	stuck	stuck
Sting 刺	sting	stung
Stink 發臭氣	stank	stunk
String 貫串	strung	strung
Swim 泳	swam	swam
Swing 動搖, 振	swung	swung
Win 得, 勝	won	won
Wind 捲	wound	wound
Wring 扭, 絞	wrung	wrung

2. *Mixed Conjugation.*

混合變化

6. 混合變化之動詞, 變遷爲兩大類:—

(1) 附加 *d* 或 *t* 於現在時(如弱變化)以成過去時及過去分詞, 但仍換其中間之母音(如強變化); 如 “seek, sought, sought.”

(2) 附加 *d* 或 *t* 而不換中間之母音(如弱變化)以成過去時, 但成過去分詞時則加附 *en* 或 *n* (如強變化); 如 “show, showed, shown.”

Group I.

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Desecch 請示	Desought	Desought
Bring 帶來	Brought	Brought

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Buy 買	bought	bought
Catch 捕	caught	caught
Seek 尋求	sought	sought
Sell 賣	sold	sold
Teach 教	taught	taught
Tell 告	told	told
Think 思	thought	thought
Work 勞働	worked	*wrought worked
Owe 負欠	ought, owed	owed
Dare 敢爲	durst, or dared	dare ^d
Can 能	could	(無)
Shall 將	should	(無)
Will 將	would	(無)
May 可以	might	(無)

Group II.

Beat 擊	beat	beaten
Do 爲	did (<i>irregular</i>)	done
Grave 掘	graved	*graven, graved
Hew 伐削	hewed	hewn
Lade 積載 (船語)	laden	laden
Melt 溶解	melted	*molten, melted
Mow 刈	mowed	mown
Rive 劈削	rived	riven
Seethe 沸飲	seethed	*seithen, seethed
Shave 剃	shaved	shaven
Shear 剪刈	sheared	*shorn, sheared
Sow 播種	sowed	sown

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Swell 膨脹	swelled	swollen
Show 表示	showed	shown
Sew 縫	sewed	sewn
Rot 腐, 枯	rotted	*rotten' rotted
Strew 撒	strewed	strewn, or stron
Prove 證明, 試驗	proved	proven, proved
Saw 鋸割	sawed	sawn
Shape 造形	shaped	shapen, shaped
Writhe 扭	wrothed	writhen, writhed

備考 1. 一有 * 符號之分詞, 現今最重要用之如動詞狀形容詞, 而非為時之部分:—

<i>Verbal Adjective.</i>	<i>Part of some Tense.</i>
<i>Worked</i> iron. (鐵器)	The horse is <i>worked</i> too hard. (馬做得太苦)
A <i>graven</i> image. (彫刻像)	The image was <i>graven</i> with letter. (其偶像係雕刻有文字)
A <i>melted</i> image. (鎔像)	The image was <i>melted</i> with heat. (偶像為熱所鎔)
A <i>rotten</i> plank. (腐板)	The plank was <i>rotten</i> by water. (板為水所腐)
The <i>sizzled</i> flesh. (煮熱肉)	The flesh was in <i>sizzled</i> in hot water. (肉煮於熱湯中)
A <i>sheared</i> lamb. (剪毛羔羊)	The lamb was <i>sheared</i> to-day. (羔羊今日剪了毛)

備考 2. 一有 † 符號之分詞, 現今除韻文之外是罕見。

3. *The Weak Conjugation.*

弱變化

7. 除前表所示之一切動詞外，餘皆是屬於弱變化即新變化，其在新變化而成過去時與過去分詞之形者，即附加 *ed* 或 *t* 於現在時。

8. 此動詞之加添尾字“*ed*”方法，原不齊一，故左舉之兩規則不可不遵守之一：

(1) 若動詞之字末有 *e*，則單加 *d* 而不可加 *ed*；如：—

Live, lived (非 *liveded*.)

Clothe, clothed (非 *clotheded*.)

除此規則以外，蓋別無例外。

(2) 若動詞 (*a*) 字末之子音爲單音，(*b*) 或爲剛音，(*c*) 或子音被單母音所先者，則字末之子音宜複用之以先於 *ed*；如：—

Fan, fanned (非 *faned*.)

Drop, dropped (非 *droped*.)

Compel, compelled; control, controlled.

但動詞之如 *lengthen*，其處之剛音不是在於最後之併音，故其成過去時爲 *lengthened*；如動詞之 *boil*，其處之母音不是單獨，故其成過去時爲 *boiled*；又如動詞之 *fold*，其處之子音是單獨，故其成過去時爲 *folded*。

除此規則是僅見有例外，其有之僅字末之爲 *l*，而此 *l* 不是剛音者，則可以複用之；如 *travel, travelled*，(非 *traveled*)，然設其有母音在前，則 *l* 又不能複用；如 *travail, travailed* (非 *travailled*)。

9. 或有弱變化之動詞成過去時之形於 *t*, 且其現在時之
 母音若爲長音時, 彼則變爲短音:—

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Creep 匍匐	crept	crept
Sleep ⁸ 眠	slept	slept
Sweep 掃	swept	swept
Keep 保持	kept	kept
Weep 泣	wept	wept
Burn 燒	burnt	burnt
Deal (dēl) 處置	dēalt	dealt
Dream (drem) 夢	drēamt or dreamed	drēamt or dreamed
Dwell 住	dwelt	dwelt
Feel 感	felt	felt
Kneel 跪	knelt	knelt
Smell 嗅	smelt	smelt
Spell 綴字, 拼音	spelt	spelt
Lean (len) 凭	leznt	lēznt
Mean (men) 志	mean	meant
Spil 溢	spilt	spilt
Spoil 損壞	Spoilt or spoiled	spoilt or spoiled

例外之動詞:—

Make 造作	made, made.	Have 有	had, had
Hear 聽	heard, heard.	Leave 離	left, left
Cleave 割, 粘着	cl' ft, cleft.	Lose 失	lost, lost
Die 死	died, dead.	Shoe 穿鞋	shod, shod
Flee 逃	fled, fled	Say 言	said, said
Lay 放置	laid, laid	Pay 償支	paid, paid

10 動詞現在時之字末有 *d* 或 *t* 者, 於過去時可以棄
 去 *ed*.

(a) 屬於此類之動詞，或有三形(現在過去過去分詞)而皆相同者。

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Burst 破裂	burst	burst
Cast 鑄 投	cast	cast
Cost 價值	cost	cost
Cut 切	cut	cut
Hit 擊	hit	hit
Hurt 損傷	hurt	hurt
Let 許	let	let
Put 放置	put	put
Rid 除	rid	rid
Set 置	set	set
Shed 澌	shed	shed
Shred 裂	shred	shred
Shut 閉	shut	shut
Slit 裂	slit	slit
Spit 唾	spit or spat	spit
Split 破裂	split	split
Spread 擴伸	spread	spread
Sweat 發汗	sweat	sweat
Thrust 衝突	thrust	thrust
Bet 賭	bet	bet
Quit 去	quit or quitted	quit or quitted
Wed 結婚	wed or wedded	wed or wedded
Knit 編	knit or knitted	knit or knitted

(b) 他之動詞在於此類，其現在時之字末為 *d*，但其成過去時與過去分詞時，則變 *d* 為 *t* (此種動詞，英 ' 僅有九個)。

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Bend 屈曲	bent	bent
Build 建築	built	built
Gild 鍍金	gilt or gilded	gilt
Gird 纏	girt or girded	girt
Lend 貸借	lent	lent
Rend 裂	rent	rent
Send 送遺	sent	sent
Spend 費用	spent	spent
Wend 行	went	(無)

(c) 屬於此類他之動詞，除其於過去時及過去分詞變長母音爲短母音外，其三形皆相同：—

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Bleed 出血	bled	bled
Breed 生，產育	bred	bred
Feed 養育	fed	fed
Speed 急	sped	sped
Meet 會遇	met	met
Lead 導，指揮	led	led
Read 讀	read	read
Light 點火	lit, lighted	lit, lighted
Shoot 射	shot	shot

備考：一關於分詞形容詞或時之部分之用法，除 208 頁及 218 頁兩表所示外，仍不可不注意於左舉各例之差異是。

<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Past of Some Tense.</i>
A <i>limbing</i> leg.	The leg is <i>limbed</i> by <i>limbs</i> .
(一) 正在游泳	(木) 已被砍
A <i>hidden</i> meaning.	The meaning is <i>hidden</i> or <i>hidden</i> .
(隱) 隱意	(意) 隱得

Verbal Adjective.

A *lighted* candle.
(着火燭)

Roast meat.
(燒炙肉)

A well-*sewn* cloth.
(善其縫補之衣)

Parts of Some Tense.

The candle is *lit* 或 *lighted*.
(蠟燭是燃着)

The meat is *roasted*.
(肉是燒熟)

I have *sewed* 或 *sewn* it.
(余是縫之)

APPENDIX 附錄 B.

AUXILIARY, DEFFECTIVE, AND ANOMALOUS
VERBS.

助動詞, 不完全動詞, 及不規則動詞

(I Be.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Present</i>	<i>Indicative</i>	am	art	is	are		
	<i>Subjunctive</i>	be	be	be	be		
<i>Past</i> ...	<i>Indicative</i>	was	wast	was	were		
	<i>Subjunctive</i>	were	were	were	were		
<i>Imitative.</i>		<i>Imperative.</i>			<i>Present Participle.</i>		<i>Past Participle.</i>
To be		be			being		having been

此動詞是用於三種之殊義：一

(a) 用爲完全敘述之自動詞，而有純然存在之意義者；
如：一

God is = God exists. (存在)

There are many man who etc. = Many men exists who
etc. 極多人在彼等.....)

(b) 用爲不完全敘述之自動詞；如：一

A horse *is* a four-legged animal.

(馬爲四足之動物)

The coat *was* of many colours.

(此外套是備極多之色)

(c) 用爲助動詞；如：一

被動語氣動詞一切之時與原動語氣動詞一切之連續形，皆賴“to be”助動詞之助而成形。

(2) Have.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Present</i>	{ <i>Indicative</i>	have	hast	has	have		
	{ <i>Subjunctive</i>	have	have	have	have		
<i>Past</i> ...	{ <i>I dicative</i>	had	hadst	had	had		
	{ <i>Subjunctive</i>	had	ha'st	ha'l	had		

Infinitive.	Imperative.	Present Participle.	Perfect Participle.
To have	have	having	having had

此動詞是用於兩種之殊義：—

(a) 用爲他動詞而表示所有之意義，在此意義，其一切法與時，皆變化正規則而用：—

We have (= we poss: ss) four cows and twenty sheep.

(我們有四匹牛及二十四羊)

(b) 用爲助動詞：—

凡一切完全時在於一切法者，原動語氣及被動語氣，皆賴此動詞之助以成形。

(3) Shall.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Present</i>	shall	shalt	shall	shall		
<i>Past</i>	should	shouldst	should	should		

此動詞是別無他形及無定法。至其用於三種之異義時，如左：—

(a) 用爲助動詞而有當然未來之意義：—

直說法未來時之第一人稱，是成形於“shall,” 至 *should* 是通用於第一三人稱，如 “I shall go,” “if he should go,” (參照 § 207 a 及 § 207 b).

(b) 用爲助動詞而有命令之意義：—

在直說法未來時之第二人稱及第三人稱時，*shall* 是爲命令之意義，如 “thou shalt not steal” [盜賊汝莫竊] (參照 § 207 b).

(c) 用爲助動詞而有義務之意義：—

“Shou'd” 是用於義務之意義，但 “shall” 則否（此動詞之効力是爲前提法而非直說法）。

Present.—I *shou'd* do (=it is my duty to do) this.

（余應爲此）

Past.—I *shou'd have done* this (=it was my duty to do this but I neglected to do it).

（余應已成此）

但次文之 *shou'd*，謂其用於義務之意義，無寧謂其用於推測 (sense of inference) 之意義爲較妥：—

He *should* have arrived by this time.

（他此時應到）

即謂由普通之事理以推之，彼於此時應到之意。

(d) 用爲助動詞而有目的之意義，但其必在接續詞 “lest” 之次，且限於 *should* 之形（參照 § 324 備考）：—

He worked hard *lest* he *should* fail.*

（彼勤工知此，彼應不失敗）

(4) Will

	Singular.			Plur. l.		
	I	2	3	I	2	3
<i>Present</i>	will	wilt	will	will		
<i>Past</i>	{ would	wouldst	would	would		
	{ willed	willedst	willed	willed		

* *Lest* he *should* fail = *lest* he might not fail.

Infinitive.	Imperative.	Present Participle.	Past Participle.
To will	willing	having willed

此動詞是用於數種之異義：—

(a) 用爲有純然未來意義之助動詞：—

在此用法，其直說法未來之第二人及第三人稱，是用 *will* 以造形，至前提法之各人稱，則可用 *would* 以造形（參照 § 207a 及 § 230, 2）。

(b) 用爲有愿意意義 (sense of intend) 之助動詞（參照 207. c）：—

I *will* not steal = I do not intend to steal.

（余將不盜）

To *will* is present with me, but what I *will* (= wish or intend to do) I do not, and what I *will* not, that I do.

—*New Testament*.

（願願在於我；但余所願者非余所爲，余所不願者則余爲之）

備考。—*Wishable* 之句，是省略的句，且爲形容詞：—

A would-be murderer (a man who wished or intended to be a murderer, but was prevented).

（不遂願之殺人者，詳言之即欲爲殺人而後阻止之人）

(c) 用於有習慣或性癖 (*habit or disposition*) 意義之助動詞：—

用於此種意義，*will* 有直說法現在時之効力，而 *would* 是有直說法過去時之効力。

When frightened, an elephant *will* burst (= is in the

habit of bursting) away with a rush.

(象被驚慌之時，則有突奔而出之癖)

He *would* come (=was in the habit of coming) every day.

(他有每日來之癖)

(d) 用於有證書即遺囑書 (will), 以傳其財產之意義之主要動詞(助動詞). 但用於此種意義, 其過去時是用 *willed* 而非 *would*:—

He *willed* (=decided by his written will or testament) that all his property should go to his daughter.

(他遺囑, 願傳其一切財產于其女(即依定其筆記之遺囑書))

(5) Do.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	I	2	3	I	2	3
<i>Present</i>	do	doest	does			do
<i>Past</i>	did	didst	did			did

Infinitive.	Imperative.	Present Participle.	Past Participle.
to do	do	doing	having done

此動詞是用於三種之殊義:—

(a) 用於“爲”字 (perform) 意義之主動詞(他動詞). 但於此意義, 其法與時皆變化正規則而用.

I am *doing* what you *have done* already.

(汝早已爲之而今正做)

(b) 僅用於在現在時與過去時內變化之助動詞：—

Do 與 *did* 是用爲其他助動詞之直說法現在時及過去時之助動詞，而助成其爲強語勢，爲否定或爲疑問之作用（參照 § 204 所舉各例）。

命令法 *do* 之用法，可參照 § 222。

(c) 用爲代動詞 (Pro-verb)，即代用動詞 (Substitute-verb) 以代已記載於前之動詞而避其反覆也。

You need not work so hard as you *did* (=worked) yesterday.

(汝無用似汝日前那樣勤勞而做)

註——此例所謂記載於前之動詞者，work 是也。後代之以 *did*，乃所以避其反覆。

(6) **May.**

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Present</i>	may	mayest	may		may	
<i>Past</i>	might	mightest	might		might	

此動詞是用於四種殊義：—

(a) 許可之意義 (sense of permission)：—

You *may* leave (=are permitted to leave) the room.

(汝可離去此室(即許去之意))

(b) 可能之意義 (sense of possibility)：—

I *might* (=I could perhaps) do it if I tried.

(余若一試則可成之)

The rains may yet come (=perhaps the rains will yet come. (雨或尚降于今日))

May be (=it may be or perhaps) you will succeed after all. (大概汝究竟可成功)

(c) 願望之意義 (sense of a wish) :—

May heaven (=I pray or wish that heaven will) protect thee. (天保護汝(即願天保護汝之意))

(d) 目的之意義 (sense of purpose) :—

I worked hard that I might win.

(余勤做, 如是余可成功)

(7) Can.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Present.....	can	canst	can			can
Past.....	could	couldst	could			could

此動詞是用於兩種之殊義：—

(a) 許可之意義.

You can (=are permitted to) go or not, as you like.

(汝去與不去, 是隨汝所願)

(b) 權力或能力之意義 (sense of power or ability) :—

He cannot (=is unable to) run fast as you.

(他走不無法之快.)

He could (=is able to) do this, if he tried.

(若他一試就能為之)

備考.—*May* 與 *can* 兩動詞，是皆爲助動詞，詳言之，彼不能如主動詞或獨立動詞之用爲獨立也。故在他文法書往往謂此二者別構成一法，而名之爲能成法 *Potential*。

(8) Ought.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Present</i> or <i>Past</i> .	ought	oughtest	ought	ought		

此動詞若溯其本源，原爲 *owe* 動詞之過去時，如：—

You *ought* (=owed) him a thousand pounds.

(汝欠他一千磅)

但於近世英語 “ought” 之形，僅用於義務 (duty) 之意義耳。

Present.—You ought *to do* this (and you are expected to do it). (汝應爲此[且汝亦預期爲之])

Past.—You ought *to do* have done this; (but you did not do it). (汝應做或此[但汝未曾做之])

(9) Must.

此動詞現今有種種變化之形。

尋其動詞之根源，寔爲古英語動詞 *motan* 之過去時，即 “to be obliged” 之義也(不得已)。但 *motant* 今已爲廢用語。

Must 於現今所用是不關係乎過去時，而關係乎現在時與未來時，且用於兩種之用途：—

(a) 必要或強迫之意義 (sense of necessity or *compulsion*):—

What *must* come, *must*.

(不可不來者不可不來)

(b) 甚強固意志之意義 (sense of a very strong *intention*):—

I *must* finished this, before I go.

(余須成就此事而後去)

(c) 確實或鞏固推理之意義 (sense of *certainty* or a very strong *inference*):—

He *must* be dead by this time.

(他於今必死)

(d) 義務或甚強固之責任之意義 (sense of *duty* or a very strong *obligation*):—

We *must* pay our debts.

(我等要償還我等之債務)

(10 Dare.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Present</i>	dare	darest	{ dares { dare	{ dares { dare		
<i>Past</i>	{ durst	{ durst	{ durst	{ durst		
	{ dared	{ dared	{ dared	{ dared		

Infinitive.	Imperative.	Present Participle.	Perfect Participle.
To dare	dare	daring	having dared

此動詞是用於二種之殊義：—

(a) 有勇氣意義 (*sense of having courage*) 之不完全敘述動詞，用於此種意義，若有否定辭而連續於後時，則現在時第三人稱單數是用 “dare” 而非 “dares.”

He *dare* not (=has not the courage to) leave the room.
(否定) (他不敢離去此室)

He *dares* to leave the room. (肯定)

在過去時若有否定辭連續於後時，有時用 *durst* 亦有時用 *dared*：—

He *durst* not (或 *dared* not) leave the room.

但設動詞為肯定者，則用 *dared* 而非 *durst*；“I dare say” 之慣用語不外 *perhaps* (或者) 之意。

(b) 挑動意義 (*sense of challenging*) 之他動詞。用於此種意義時，其法與時皆可變化正規則而用

He *dares* me (=challenges me) to fight.

(他挑戰我)

He *dared* me (=challenged me) to my face.

(他于余之面前挑戰我)

(II) *to*.

此動詞是動詞之過去時，蓋其古動詞現今除 *be-queath* 之合成語外，已成廢用語。

此動詞之意爲“says”或“said,”故可平用於過去時及現在時，且限用於第三人稱及單數，又常立於其主辭之前：—

“Let me not live,” *quoth* he.—*Shakespeare*.

(彼自言「許余勿生」)

(12) Need.

此是一主動詞，即獨立動詞，其意義爲 require 或 want' 其法與時皆可變化正規則而用。

此動詞用于單數第三人稱時，則爲 *need* 而非 *needs*，此正與有否定文附隨於後者之用 *dare* 而代 *dares* 同：—

He *need* not (=is under no necessity to) do any more work. (他無須更做別樣二(即不要做之意))

例如其句爲“he must *needs* do this” (他須要做此)，此 *needs* 是確有領位之寔際，其 s 之前是脫 ' 之符號點 (apostrophe)，故 *needs* 同於 need's=of need=of necessity. 於是 *needs* 又成爲副詞(參照 § 266).

(13) Worth.

此動詞之作用，熟語中如“woe *worth* the day,” 其意同於“woe be to the day” (禍與其時日相當)，其名詞之“day” 於此是爲賓位。

Worth 於此是爲“to become” (相當)意味之古動詞前提法(願望之意義——參照 § 230, 2).

(14) Wit.

此動詞爲“to know” (知)之意，僅有數形留存，餘皆廢用。

(a) 此動詞無定法之形 *to wit*, 即為 “namely” (即是) 之意義, 現今此字多用於法律的文書:—

He left me by will all his land, *to wit*, the three farms.

他留下遺書, 謂贈其一切田地于我, 即是三所田園。

(b) 此動詞之現在分詞僅存於否定副詞 *unwitting* 之形, 其意義為 *unknowingly* (不知) 或 *unintentionally* (無意)。

You cannot blame him for this, since he did it *unwitting*.

(彼之無意識而為者, 爾不因此而罪他)

(c) 此動詞在于直說法之現在時, 其形為 *wot*; 在直說法之過去時, 其形為 *wist*; 但此兩語皆將廢用。

Present.—He *wot* neither what he babbles no what he mans.

—*Tyndall.* (彼既不知其何所喃喃, 又不知其意)

Past.—They *wist* not what had become of him.—*New*

Testament. (彼等不知其如何結果)

(15) Beware.

此是一混合動詞, 由 *be* 與 *ware* 兩字所合成。 “Ware” 是一舊形形容詞 “wary,” 其意為 “cautious” (注意)。此形容詞之 *ware* 是動詞 “be” 之完成辭, 且常有前置詞連續其後而用,

(16) Wont.

此語是有 “to continue” (續) 意義之某廢用動詞之過去分詞, 故 “wont” 為 “accustomed” (習慣) 之意義。

(13) **Hight.**

此語是有“to call”意義之某廢用動詞之過去分詞。

(4) **Impersonal Verbs.**

非人稱動詞

動詞而用“it”爲其主辭，且有領位之人稱代名詞以繼其後時，是謂之非人稱 Impersonal，即用於非人稱者也

It shames me to hear this = I am ashamed to hear this.

(余羞聞此)

It repents me of my folly = I repent of my folly.

(余悔恨自己之愚)

It behoves me to do this = I ought to do this.

(余應當爲此)

于此有三慣例，其 *it* 是省畧，而其實位代名詞是置於動詞之前而不置於其後：—

It thinks = it thinks me = I think. (余思維)

It seems = it seems to me. (余所見)

It pleases = it seems to me 或 it pleases me. (余喜)

左舉一句是省畧句：—

So *please* your Majesty. — *Shakespeare.*

此句之意味，同於“*If it so please your Majesty*”即“*if your Majesty so please* 或 *so desire*” (若陛下之御意如此欲願)之意。

